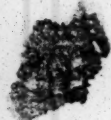




Imprimatur.



Septemb. vii. 1686.

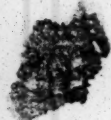
ROB. MIDGLEY.



Line.
8° C.11.)



Imprimatur.



Septemb. vii. 1686.

ROB. MIDGLEY.



Line.
8° C.11.)

Grammatica Anglo-Romana :
OR,
A Syncritical Grammar,
Teaching English youth
THE
LATIN TONGUE

By Few and Easie RULES
COMPARING
English with Latin
WITH

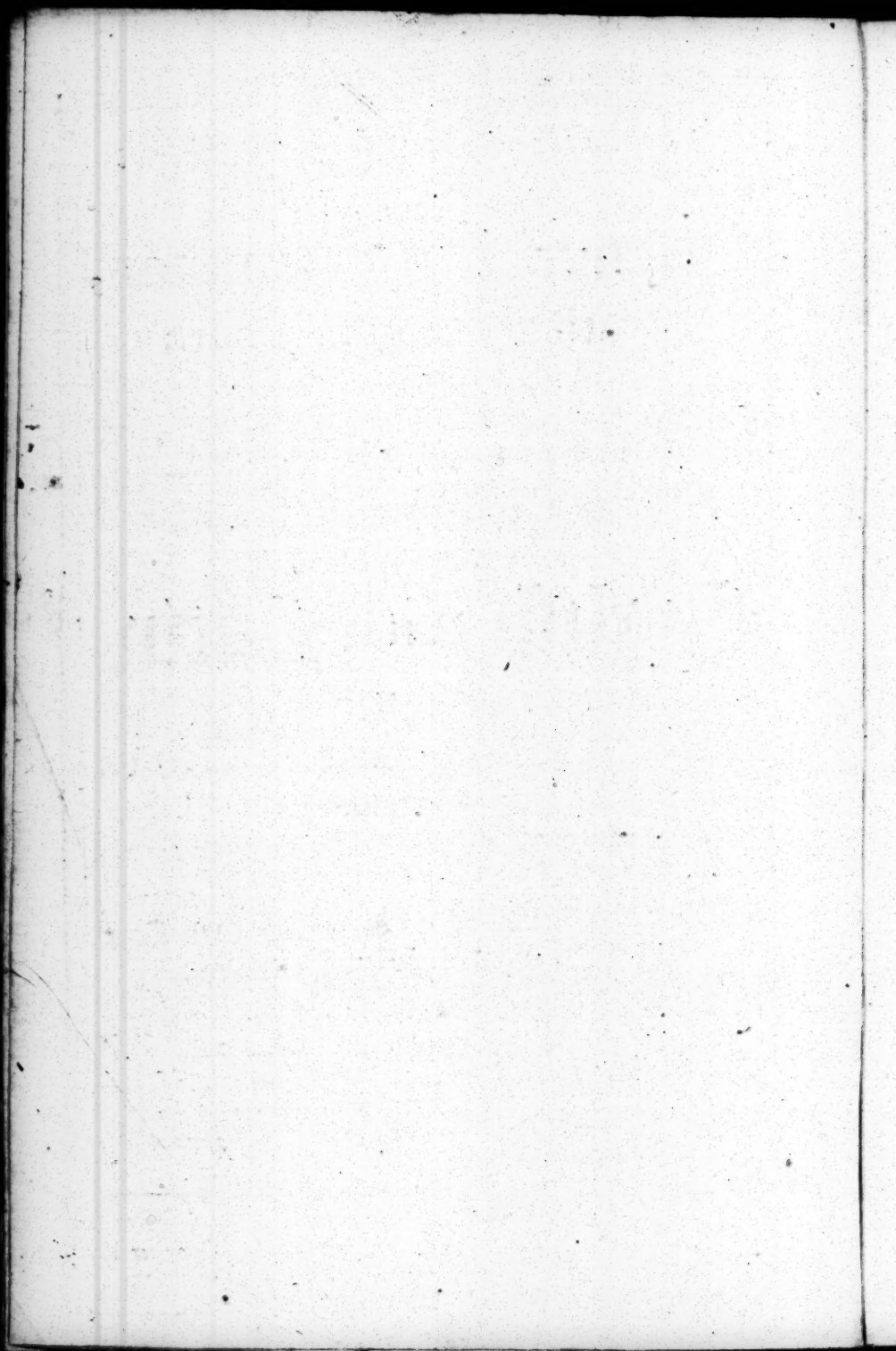
A COMMENT for the Use of
Riper Years; containing the Elegan-
cies; and explaining the difficult Phrases and
Idioms, which are Peculiar to the *LATIN*.

Fitted to the Sense of the Learned *Oxford-Com-*
mentators upon *LILLY's Grammar*.

By *Samuel Shaw*, Master of the Free-School in
Ashby-de-la-Zouch, Leicester-shire.

————— *Culpa docentis*
(*Me miserum!*) arguitur, quod levâ in partē manille
Nil salit Arcadico juveni. ————— *Juven.*

LONDON, Printed for *Michael Johnson*, Bookfeller :
And are to be Sold at his Shops in *Litchfield* and *Uxoliter* in
Stafford-shire; and *Ashby-de-la-Zouch*, *Leicester-shire*, 1687.



TO THE
NOBLE and INGENIOUS
GEORGE Lord HASTINGS,
SON and HEIR APPARENT
OF THE
RIGHT HONOURABLE
(His Honoured Patron)
THEOPHILUS,
Earl of HUNTINGDON;
Lord Hungerford, Botreaux, Mo-
lyns, and Moyls, &c.

THE AUTHOR,
As a Testimony of Honour and Gratitude,
Humbly Dedicateth
THIS HIS
SYNCRITICAL GRAMMAR.

TO THE
HONORABLE MEMBERS OF THE
GEORGIA LEGISLATURE

OF THE
RIGHT HONORABLE
(His Honor the Governor)

THE
LEGISLATIVE
COUNCIL
OF THE
STATE OF GEORGIA

THE
LEGISLATIVE
COUNCIL
OF THE
STATE OF GEORGIA

Viro Præstanti
Moribus, Doctrina & Indole,
Domino EDUARDO ABNEIO
Equiti,

Tum Doctorum omnium,
Tum suo ipsius indocti
Amico & Mecænati,

Notas has Criticas
In Grammaticam Syncriticam
(Perpetuum (qualecunque) Honoris
Monumentum)

Sacras esse voluit
Illius obsequentissimus
(Licèt indignissimus)

S. S.

T O T H E
R E A D E R.

IN the Multitude of *Grammars*, (not to reflect upon any) it seem'd to many Judicious Men, that there was One wanting, that should have these Two Qualifications; *viz.* First, That should accommodate *Latin* to *English*, for the Satisfaction of *English* Minds: Secondly, That should Teach *Latin* by *English* Rules; that so *Children* might learn a Language which they know not, by One that they know. What Mr. *Lewis* did in
this

To the Reader.

this Matter, was an Ingenious *Essay*, and no more. If the Learned *Oxford-Commentators* had been pleas'd, instead of a *Comment* upon an Imperfect and Erring *Grammar*, to have Compiled a *Grammatical System* in *English*, they had not only superseded this Undertaking of Mine; but, I think, put a *Ne plus ultra* to all Endeavours of this Nature. I intended it only to direct in *Etymology* and *Syntax*; as presuming, that *Boys* should learn the Nature and Value of Letters, right Spelling, and whatever belongs to *Orthography*, before they come to *Gram-*
mar-

To the Reader.

mar-Schools: And the Art of Making Verses is to be learnt out of other Books, well Compos'd for that purpose. Therefore let no one expect more from this *Grammar*, than what was put into it. I yielded to the Perswasion of some *Friends*, in retaining the Three known *Special Rules*, for the *Gender of Nouns Substantives Common*: But I do not think that way so Easie and Intelligible, as to know the *Gender* by the *Termination*: Which therefore I have Translated out of the *Oxford-Grammar*, with little Alteration, and put into an *Appendix*; and do recommend
to

To the Reader.

to the Reader, in stead of the *Fourth, Fifth, and Sixth Chapters* of the B O O K. If you add hereunto the little *Traët* at the End of the *Oxford-Grammar*, concerning *Verbs* of various Structure, and *Dr. Walker's Particles*, I hope there will be nothing lacking to make a good *Grammarian*; save that the Ingenuity and Industry of the *Master*, to Explain and Inculcate *Rules*, and Teach the *Art of Construing*, will always remain a Requisite of the highest Nature, in the Instruction and Education of Y O U T H. *Vale & fruere.*

THE



THE HEADS OF THE CHAPTERS.

CHAP. I.

Page

- O***f the Eight Parts of Speech; and particularly, of a Noun* 1.
- II. *Of what belongs to a Noun; and particularly, of Number.* 4.
- III. *Of the Genders of Nouns Substantives.* 8.
- IV. *Of the Genders of Nouns Substantives Common.* 14.
- V. *Of the Second Special Rule.* 17.
- VI. *Of the Third Special Rule.* 20.
- VII. *Of Epicenes; and of some that vary their Gender.* 23.

CHAP. VIII.

The Heads of the Chapters.

CHAP.	Page
VIII. <i>Of the Cases of Nouns.</i>	25.
IX. <i>Of the Nominative and Vocative Cases.</i>	29.
X. <i>Of the Accusative Case.</i>	32.
XI. <i>Of the Genitive Case.</i>	36.
XII. <i>Of the Dative Case.</i>	43.
XIII. <i>Of the Ablative Case.</i>	47.
XIV. <i>Of the First Declension.</i>	50.
XV. <i>Of the Second Declension.</i>	52.
XVI. <i>Of the Third Declension.</i>	54.
XVII. <i>Of the Fourth Declension.</i>	58.
XVIII. <i>Of the Fifth Declension.</i>	60.
XIX. <i>Of Words irregular in Declension.</i>	61.
XX. <i>Of Adjectives, and their Gender and Declension.</i>	63.
XXI. <i>Of the Comparing of Adjectives.</i>	68.
XXII. <i>Of Pronouns; their Declensions, &c.</i>	73.
XXIII. <i>Of a Verb, and its Moods.</i>	79.
XXIV. <i>Of the Tenses, Numbers, Persons, and Conjugations of Verbs.</i>	85.
XXV. <i>Of the Way of forming Verbs in o in the Present Tense; and the Tenses that come from thence.</i>	90.
XXVI. <i>Of the Way of forming Verbs in o in the Preterperfect Tense; and the Tenses which come from thence.</i>	94.
XXVII. <i>Of the Verb sum; and the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in or.</i>	99.
XXVIII. <i>Of the Species, and Figure of Verbs; and some Rules about the Forming of them.</i>	103.
CHAP. XXIX.	

The Heads of the Chapters.

CHAP.	Page
XXIX. <i>Of the Preterperfect Tense, and Supines of Simple Verbs in o, of the First Conjugation.</i>	107.
XXX. <i>Of the Preterperfect Tense, and Supines of Verbs of the Second Conjugation.</i>	109.
XXXI. <i>Of the Preterperfect Tense, and Supines of Verbs of the Third Conjugation.</i>	112.
XXXII. <i>Of the Preterperfect Tense, and Supines of Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.</i>	121.
XXXIII. <i>Of the Preterperfect Tense, and Supines of Compound Verbs.</i>	124.
XXXIV. <i>Some Observations about the Preterperfect Tense, and Supines of Verbs.</i>	129.
XXXV. <i>Of Verbs irregular in Declining.</i>	131.
XXXVI. <i>Of Defective Verbs.</i>	135.
XXXVII. <i>Of Verbs Impersonals.</i>	138.
XXXVIII. <i>Of Gerunds and Supines.</i>	141.
XXXIX. <i>Of Participles.</i>	145.
XL. <i>Of Adverbs.</i>	151.
XLI. <i>Of Conjunctions.</i>	157.
XLII. <i>Of Prepositions.</i>	160.
XLIII. <i>Of Interjections.</i>	173.
XLIV. <i>Of Figures belonging to Orthography.</i>	176.
XLV. <i>Of Figures belonging to Etymology.</i>	178.
XLVI. <i>Of the Agreement of the Parts of Speech to make-up a Sentence.</i>	183.
XLVII. <i>Of the Concord between the Substantive, and the Adjective.</i>	187.
CHAP. XLVIII	

The Heads of the Chapters.

CHAP.	Page
XLVIII. <i>Of the Relative, the Concord of Substantives, and of Reciprocals.</i>	191.
XLIX. <i>Of Government.</i>	196.
L. <i>Of the Infinitive Mood, Gerunds and Sappines.</i>	199.
LI. <i>Of the Figures of Syntax.</i>	205.
LII. <i>Certain Rules or Canons, briefly comprehending the Chiefest Fundamentals of Latin Syntax.</i>	214.
<i>An Appendix, containing a shorter and easier Way of finding out the Gender of Nouns Substantives Common, by the Termination.</i>	217.

ERRATA.

P Age 11. Line 11. for *Paphnūs* read *Daphnūs*. p. 21. l. 7. for *Pulvis, obex, & adeps*, read *Obex, pulvis, adeps*. Ibid. l. 12. for *Pugil, præsul, homo*, read *Præsul, homo, pugil &*. p. 24. l. 20. for *glidīs* read *glidis*. p. 33. l. 31. blot out *that is, affirmabat pecuni-*
am. p. 34. l. 37. for *esureo* read *esurio*. p. 35. l. 30. for *sannīs* read
sannio. p. 40. l. 10. read *ἔσθωσαν*. Ibid. l. 11. read *Sed nihil, &c.*
Ibid. l. 35. for *Adcam* read *Ad eam*. p. 41. l. 10. for *Participle* read
Particle. p. 57. l. 24. for *molle* read *molle*. p. 62. l. 33. read *domus*.
p. 71. l. 19. for *imbecillimus* read *imbecillimis*. Ibid. l. 31. add this
Mark (*) at the Beginning of the Line. p. 93. l. 11. for *amamur*
read *amemur*. p. 112. l. 11. for *cudi* read *cudi*. p. 122. l. 15. for *a*
into e read *a into i*. p. 181. l. 2. for *levisque* read *levisque*. p. 189.
l. 12, 13. for *[in]* in *Isat. Let.* read *[in]* in *Rom. Let.* four times.
errata *corrigenda*. p. 48. {30 r. *Missis* p. 69 {2 r. *Xapha* Ibid. {1
for. 20 r. *ick*, p. 99 {29 r. *meal* p. 122 {10 r. *curio* p. 122 {10
leao sies p. 126 {4 r. *valet* p. 126 {21 r. *sab ipso*.
p. 38. {34. r. *Additio*. A Syn-



A

Syncritical Grammar.

C H A P. I.

Of the Eight Parts of Speech; and particularly, of a NOUN.

EVERY word in the *Latin* Tongue, is either a *Noun*, a *Pronoun*, a *Verb*, a *Participle*, an *Adverb*, a *Conjunction*, a *Preposition*, or an *Interjection*. (1)

The Four first of these, are declined or varied; that is, *Nouns*, *Pronouns*, and *Participles*, are declined or varied into *Cases*, and *Verbs* into *Persons*, *Moods*, and *Tenses*. The Four last are invariable, or undeclined. (2)

A *Noun* is a word that signifieth a *Person*, or a *Thing*, or the *Quality* or *Mode* thereof, primarily, without difference of *Time*. (3)

Nouns are either *Substantives*, or *Adjectives*.

B

A Noun

A Noun Substantive is a word, that standeth by it self, or is good Sense of it self; and requireth no other word to be added to it, to express its Signification. It is usually known in the *English* Tongue, by the Particles *a*, *an*, or *the*, set before it; as, *a Man, an Army, the Clergy, the Laity.* (4)

A Noun Adjective is a word, that cannot stand by it self to be full Sense, but needeth some Substantive to be added to it; as, *good, great, white, black.* An Adjective will be good Sense in *English*, by putting the word *Man* or *Thing* to it; because the Adjective denotes the quality, kind, or manner of the Person or Thing.

A Noun Substantive is either *Common*, or *Proper*.

A Noun Substantive Common or Appellative, is common to all things of the same kind; as, *homo* a *Man*, and *liber* a *Book*, are words agreeing to all Men, and all Books.

A Noun Substantive Proper is not so called, as if it were peculiar to any one Person or Thing; (for *Joseph* and *Mary* are Names given to many Men and Women) but because it is not common to all of the same kind. (5)

Nouns are many other ways divided, in respect of their Signification. (6)

Notes on CHAP. I.

(1) **T**Here are many little Words or Particles in the *English* Tongue, which cannot be reduced to any of these Eight Parts; but are Signs of the Cases of Nouns, or of the Moods, Tenses, or Persons of Verbs. These Eight Parts in the *Latin* Tongue, might fitly be reduced to Four, by comprehending the Pronoun, and the Participle under a Noun, and the Preposition and Interjection under the Adverb.

(2) Undeclin'd Words are properly such, as have neither Number, nor Case, nor Person; for even Adverbs and Prepositions are compar'd, or vari'd, by *Degrees*.

(3) *Nomen, quasi Nominen*, the Mark or Name of Things, or their Qualities. The Name of the Person, or Thing it self, is a Substantive; the Name of the Manner, or Quality of it, is an Adjective. By the word [*Primarily*] it is distinguish'd from a Pronoun; and by [*without difference of Time*] from a Verb and Participle. *Vos. Est vox participii numeri casualis cum genere. Sanct.*

(4) The Particles *a, an, and the*, are Notes of Individuation; therefore, we do not use them in *English* before proper Names, nor before Pronouns, nor before Common Nouns when they signify generally; as we do not say, *The Beauty is vain*, nor, *The Bread sustains Life*; but *Beauty* and *Bread*.

(5) There are also Nouns Adjectives proper, which come from the proper Nouns Substantives; as, *Apollineus* from *Apollo*; and others, which denote an Affection peculiar to some Individual; as, *Gradivus* is a proper Epithete for *Mars*.

(6) And so Nouns are divided into *Primitives*, and *Derivatives*. *Primitives* again are said to be *Collectives, Fictitious, Interrogatives, Redditives, Numerals*: And these again are, *Cardinals, Ordinals, Distributives, Partitives, Universals, Particulars*. *Derivatives* are manifold also, *Verbals, Gentiles, Patronymicks, Patrials, Diminutives, Possessives, Materials, Locals, Adverbials, Prepositionals, Participials*.

C H A P. II.

Of what belongs to a Noun; and particularly, of Number.

BESIDES *Kind* and *Figure*, (whereby a Noun is said to be Primitive or Derivative, Simple or Compound) which belong to other Parts of Speech, as well as a Noun; there are to be considered in a Noun, *Number, Gender, Case, Declension, and Comparison.* (1)

In the *Latin* Tongue there are but Two Numbers, the *Singular*, and the *Plural*.

A Noun is of the *Singular Number* when it names but One; as, *homo* a *Man*, *pes* a *Foot*, *vacca* a *Cow*, *uxor* a *Wife*, *liber* a *Book*. It is of the *Plural Number*, when it names more than One; as, *homines* *Men*, *pedes* *Feet*, *vacca* *Kine*, *uxores* *Wives*, *libri* *Books*. This last sort of Plurals, which is made by putting *s* to the *Singular*, is most usual in *English*.

Some Nouns, call'd *Collectives*, denote many, although they be of the *Singular Number*; and in *Concords*, are used as Plurals; as, *Populus* *lugent*, the *People lament*.

Two or more Substantives *Singular*, with a *Conjunction Copulative* coming between them, are used in *Concord* as one *Plural*; as, *pater & mater amant me*.

Some Substantives of the *Plural Number*, that want the *Singular*, signifie but one thing; as, *Athene*, *Nuptie*, *Litera*, a *Letter*.

Some Substantives want the *Plural Number*. (2)

Some want the *Singular Number*. (3)

Some Nouns are of both Numbers in one *Termination*; as, *nequam*, *pondo*, when it signifies a *Pound weight*.

Notes

Notes on CHAP. II.

(1) **I**T is disputed, whether Adjectives can properly be said to have Gender; for it is certain, that every Adjective is of all Genders: However they have Terminations fitted to the Gender of Substantives. Comparison belongs properly to Nouns Adjectives; though some few Substantives are sometimes compar'd; viz. when they put on the Nature of Adjectives, and denote Quality; as, *Neromior*.

(2) 1. Proper Names want the Plural Number, except such as are of the Plural Number only; as, *Aibene*; or when the same Name is given to many; as, *Multi fuerunt Cæsares*; or when Similitude is intended; as, *Omnes non possunt esse Homeri aut Pindari*. 2. The Specific Names of Arts, Ages of Man's Life, Diseases, Vertues, Vices; as also, of Corn, Spices, Herbs, Flowers, Liquors, Metals, and Minerals, for the most part, want the Plural Number. But amongst the Names of Things growing up out of the Earth, there are found in the Plural Number, *faba, fraga, lupini, pisa, zizania, avena, cardui, urtica, malva, cicuta, papavera, rose, lilia*. Amongst Metals and Minerals are found Plurals; *era, orichalca, stanna, electra*: Amongst Liquors; *aqua, vina, musta, pices, ceras*. 3. These Masculines seldom have the Plural Number:

Ros, finus, & limus, sanguis, penus, & sopor, aether, Hesperus, & mundus, pontus, pulvis, pudor, æcr, Cestus, fumus, viscus, vesper, nemo, meridies, Sol, sal, adeps, carcer, clavus, geniusq; vigorq; Adde jubar, cruor, & pallor, metus; adde timorq; Sic fitus. ———

Nor these Feminines:

Gloria, gaza, salus, pubes, pix, talio, tussis, Bilis, bumus, fuga, culpa, fames, contagio, tellus, Lux, requies, proles, sobolesq; memoria, tabes, Fama, lues, mors, nexq; strues, cholera, & sitis, alvus, Paupertas, plebs, paxq; quies, galla, indole, labes, Barba, hara, arena, cutu, sanies, luculemia, pestis: Sic pituita, valepudo, prosapia, vita.

Nor these Neuters :

Fascinum, & hordeum, bilum, nitrum, fœnum, pelagus, rus, Vulgus, ebur, collum, mel, mulsum, defrutum, & album, Thus, fiser, atq; solum, filer, ævum, tabum, hepar, & far, Leicum; sic senium, canum, baratrumq; salumq;; Fustiumq;; lutum, vitrum, viscum, forum, & balec, Pus, sinum, solium, nihilum, glutemq; macellum, Verq; penum, pedum, virus; sic fasq; nefasq;; Fel, jubar, atq; gelu.

To these may be added Nouns of the Fifth Declension, which also want the Plural Number; except *Res, species, facies, acies*, and *dies*. Some Nouns are only found in Three Cases, in the Plural Number; such as,

Hordea, vina, forum, far, mulsum, defruta, labes, Ros, soboles, mare, byems, rus, thus, æs, spes, simul & mel, &c.

No Substantives are naturally incapable of a Plural Number; and we may partly guess by the *English*, what *Latin* Words are not used in the Plural.

The using of some Words in the Plural Number, is to be ascribed either to the change of their Signification, (as *soles* for *Days*, and *sales* for *Fests*) or to the Liberty that some Writers take to themselves: But they are not to be used without good Authority.

(3) Those that want the Singular Number, are either Masculines; as all the Names of Cities, that end in *i*; such as *Gabii, Philippi, &c.* and these following Appellatives:

Manes, majores, antes, mensesq; minores, Liberi & annales, lemures, fastiq; penates, Poster; item Superi, fasces, oculiq; foriq;: Adde pugillares, cum cœlibusq; quirites, Primores, proceresq; sales, sic inferi, & artus,-- Cancelli.

Or Feminines, as all the Names of Cities that end in *æ*, or *es*; as, *Aibena, Gades, &c.* and these following Appellatives:

Antia, & inducia, mina, & infidia, exequiaq; Reliquia, nona, nugaq; manubia, & idus, Quisquilia, cuna, dira, irica, inferiaq;

Feria;

*Feria, & excubia, furia, phalaraq; calenda,
 Primitia, lactes, grates, valva, tenebraq;
 Divitia, Parca, quadriga, nuptia, & alpes,
 Blanditia, antenna, biga, baia, argutia, apina;
 Clitella, latebra, decima, sic exquilia, ades,
 Illecebra, gervaq; facetia, ineptia, & antia,
 Vergiliaq; fores, iberma, literaq; secunda,
 Phala, offucia, & exuvia, quibus, excubiaq;
 Addantur, fracesq; minutia, itemq; flocesq;
 Tonsilla, salebra, praestigia, itemq; plagaq;
 Pro reti, vigilia, & suppetia, & vindicia.*

Rom. {ett

Rom. {ett

Or else they are Neuters; as Names of Cities of the Plural Number; such as *Artaxata, Susa*: Names of Feasts, and Publick Games; as, *Bacchanalia, Palilia, Olympia, Pythia*; and many Adjectives put substantively; the words *feſta, convivium, dra, or negotia*, being understood; such as *parentalia, sponsalia, lautia, parapherna, natalitia, gesta*; and many more. And many that are more properly, Substantives; such as these:

*Acta, aſſiva, arma, adverſaria, caſtra;
 Sic bellaria, compita, ſicq; crepundia cum cu-
 nabula, ſicq; ceraunia, item donaria, & exta,
 Iliia, hiberna & juſta, mapalia, maenia, luſtra,
 Et magalia, item magaria, magnata ponas
 Et magnalia, ſic multiſtia, munia, pone ob-
 livia, paſcua, prabia, ſic praecordia, roſtra,
 Et rapicia, cum ſcruta, ponas teſqua, ſtativa, &c.
 Nomina græca licet ponas Tempèq; Meleq;.*

Rom. {ett

C H A P. III.

Of the Genders of Nouns Substantives.

THE Genders of Nouns are found out for the agreement of the Substantive, and the Adjective : For Substantives in *English* have no Grammatical Gender, because the Adjectives have no different casual Terminations.

There are Three Genders ; the *Masculine*, the *Feminine*, and the *Neuter*.

Some Nouns are used both in the Masculine Gender, and the Feminine, and are called *Commons* ; as *Parents*, a *Father* or *Mother*.

Some are used either in the Masculine or Feminine, as we please ; and are called *Doubtful* ; as, *dies a Day* : These have no respect to Sex. (1)

There are General and Special Rules, whereby to know the Gender of Nouns Substantives. The General Rules for the Gender of Nouns Substantives proper, are these :

1. All the Proper Names of *Gods*, of *Angels*, of *Men*, and all other Male - Creatures ; of *Rivers*, of *Months*, of *Mountains*, and of *Winds*, are of the Masculine Gender. (2)

2. All the Proper Names of *Goddeesses*, of *Women*, and other Female - Creatures ; of *Cities*, of *Countries*, of *Islands*, and of *Trees*, are of the Feminine Gender. (3)

The General Rules for the Gender of Nouns Substantives common, are these :

1. Nouns

1. Nouns Appellatives of Men, and other Creatures, common to the Male only, are Masculines ; as *Pater, Filius*. (4)

2. Appellatives of Women, and other Creatures, common to the Female only, are Feminines ; as, *Mater*. (5)

3. The Names of Offices, and Things belonging both to the Male and Female kind, are of the Masculine Gender, when we intend the Male ; and of the Feminine, when we intend the Female ; as, *parens, conjux*. (6)

4. The Names of Birds, Wild-Beasts, and Fishes, are called *Epicenes* ; which comprehend both Sexes under one Termination, and one Gender. In these, the ending points out the Gender, and the Adjective distinguishes the Sex ; as, *Anser fœta, Elephanta grvida*. (7)

5. All Nouns ending in *um*, are of the Neuter Gender, except the Proper Names of Men and Women ; as we say, *Mi Pagnium, mea Glycerium*.

6. All Nouns undeclin'd, are of the Neuter Gender. (8)

7. All Words put for themselves, that is, to signify the Word, and not the Thing, are of the Neuter Gender ; as when I say, *Rex derivatum est à Rego*.

8. All Verbs and Adverbs put for Nouns, are used in the Neuter Gender ; as, *Scire tuum, aliud cras*.

To shew the Gender of Nouns in declining them, we may put the Pronoun *hic, hæc, hoc*, after the manner of the *Greeks* ; but it is not necessary.

Notes on CHAP. III.

(1) **I**N Nouns that are said to be of the Doubtful Gender, either there is no Sex; as in *Margo, finis, &c.* or if there be, there is no regard had to it, as in *Serpens, dama, &c.* but we put the Adjective to it in the Masculine or in the Feminine Gender, as we please. But those that are called Commons, take to them a Masculine Adjective when they signify the Male-kind, and a Feminine when they denote the Female. There are also some Nouns that are Commons in signification, and agree to both Sexes, but are not Commons in construction, but are limited to Adjectives of one Gender only; as *fur, latro, homo, vas*, are limited to Adjectives of the Masculine Gender; *proles, soboles* to Adjectives of the Feminine; *animal, mancipium* to Adjectives of the Neuter: as we do not call a Woman *Magnam furem*, but *Feminam furacissimam*; nor *Hominem miseram* but *Mulierem miseram*. *Vos*. These following are Commons both in signification and construction.

*Conjux, atq; parens, infans, patruelis & heres,
Affinis, vindex, judex, dux, miles & hostis,
Augur & antistes, vates, conviva, sacerdos,
Municipi; addas adolescens, civis & author,
Custos, nemo, comes, testis, fur, bosq; canisq;ue.*

(2) Some will have the Names of Men and Women that end in *um* to be of the Neuter Gender, but the plain distinction of Sex in Men and Women will not allow it; *a* is a Feminine Termination, as *um* is a Neuter, yet *Catalina*, the name of a Man, must be of the Masculine Gender. But as to Rivers and Mountains, the matter is not so plain, but they may be safely said to have their gender by their Termination, as Appellatives have. And so *Allia, Garumna, Mosella, Styx, Lethe*, are of the Feminine Gender; *Fader* and *Nar* are of the Neuter: And when the Poets put Adjectives of the Masculine Gender to any of these Names of Rivers, it is by the Figure *Synibesis*, respecting the general word *Amnis*. *Acheron* or *Acherons* signifying a River, is of the Masculine Gender; but when it signifies the Place or Region, it is of the Feminine, respect being had to the general word *Regio*. Also the Mountains *Atina*, and *Oeta, Ossa, Osbryx* and *Ida*, are Feminines, although the Poets put Masculine Adjectives to them, respecting the general word *Mons*, which is a Masculine.

(3) To

(3) To Cities we may add *Villages* and *Ships*, which are also Feminines. The reason why these Nouns are used in the Feminine Gender, seems to be the respect had to the general words *urbs*, *regio*, or *terra*, *navis* and *insula*. And the reason why these general words have a Feminine Termination assigned them, is, Because they have some resemblance to Mothers; so that the Earth is call'd *Alma mater*. The Names of Cities are, by Termination, of the Masculine Gender, that end in *i*, of the Plural Number, as *Delpbi*, *Argi*; that end in *o* in the singular number, as *Sulmo*, *Narbo*, *Sirmio*, *Hippo*; that end in *us* contracted from *bus* in the Greek, as *Epibnūs*, *Opūs*, *Amathūs* Gen. *untis*; those that end in *us* and come from Greek Nouns in *os* of the Third Declension, are sometimes Masculines, but for the most part Feminines, as *Ephesus*, *Rhodus*, *Corinthus*, &c. in as Masculine as *Agragas*. These are, by Rule of Termination, of the Neuter Gender, that end in *a*, and are of the Plural Number, as *Bactra*, *Ecbatana*; that end in *a* or *e*, and are of the Third Declension, as *Zeugma*, *Reate*, *Praneste*; that end in *i* or *y*, as *Illiturgi*, *Sepe*; that end in *l*, as *Hispal*, *Sutbri*; that end in *um*, or in *on* short, as *Lugdunum*, *Ilion*; that end in *r*, as *Gadir*, *Tybur* and *Anxur*, which is sometimes Masculine and sometimes Neuter; for no Nouns in *ur* are Feminines; that end in *os*, and are of the First Declension of the Greek Contracts, as *Argos*. If Feminine Adjectives be put to any of these, as it often happens in Authors, we must reckon that there is a *Syllepsis* of the word *Urbs*. The names of Trees are of the Feminine Gender, with respect to the general word *Arbor*, which is Feminine: But there are found in the Masculine, *spinus*, *oleaster*, *pinaster*, *pyraster*; and in the Neuter *filer*, *suber*, *robur*, *acer*, and all that end in *um*, as *buxum*, &c. *Dumus* is Masculine, and *Rubus* Doubtful, and *ibus* Neuter: But they are not Names of Trees.

(4) To these may be added the Names of People; as *Arabes*, *Persa*, &c. which are of the Masculine Gender, because we respect Men as the worthier Sex. To these also may be added, all the Nouns that denote the parts of the word *As*, or are compounded of it, which are of the Masculine Gender, except *Uncia* and the Compounds of it, that end like it; Such Masculines are *Deunx*, *quasi deest uncia*; *Decunx*, *quasi decem uncia*, or *dextans*, *quia deest sextans*; *dodrans*, *quia deest quadrans*; *bes pro des*, *quia deest triens*; *Septunx*, *quasi septem uncia*; *semis* ex *numis*; *quincunx*, *quasi quinque uncia*; *triens*, *quasi tertia pars assis*; *quadrans*, *quasi quarta pars*; *sextans*, *quasi sexta pars*. So *Centussis* and other Compounds of *As*. To this Rule may also be added Nouns Verbals ending

ending in *a*; Such as *Advena*, *agricola*, *alienigena*, *verna*, *assecta*, *auriga*, *grajugena*, *perfuga*, *transfuga*, *Trojugena*, and other like; which although they are Commons in signification, yet are Masculines only in construction, not admitting a Feminine Adjective, or very rarely. Add also *Scurra*, *rabula*, *lixa*, *lanista*, *pincerna*, &c. And also some Latin Nouns ending in *a* coming from Greek Nouns that end in *es*; which are Masculine in Latin, as they are in Greek; Such are *Cometa*, *planeta*, *poeta*, *propheta*, &c. But under this Rule must be excepted such words as *Opera* Workmen, *custodia* Sentinels, *vigilia* and *excubia* Watch and Ward, which are Feminines by Virtue of their Termination, as primarily denoting the Actions of Men, and but Secondly and Tropically apply'd to Men themselves.

(5) So are *Soror*, *socrus*, *mulier*, *uxor*, *filia*, *matrona*, *nurus*, *regina*, &c. except from this Rule *scortum* and *prostitulum*, and from both *Animal* and *mancipium*, and the like.

(6) But there are many words common in signification, respecting both Sexes, that are used only with Masculine Adjectives, or very rarely with Feminines; Such are all the Nouns coming from Verbs and ending in *a*; and such are these that follow, *Camelus*, *cliens*, *coctes*, *eques*, *exul*, *fur*, *homicida*, *homo*, *index*, *juvenis*, *hospes*, *interpreter*, *latro*, *pedes*, *praesul*, *princeps*, *pugil*, *senex*. Oxf. Gram. And such are many Nouns compounded of the Verbs, *Cano*, *capió*, *facio*, and *specio*, as *Cornicen*, *tibicen*, *municeps*, *particeps*, *princeps*, *artifex*, *aurifex*, *opifex*, *auspex*, *aruspex*, &c. But here note well, That many of these Substantives Common, of both sorts, (i. e. of those that are said to be Commons only in signification, and those that are said to be Commons in signification and construction both) are more truly Adjectives; only their signification is such as can scarce be matcht, with a Substantive of the Neuter Gender; Such are *Affinis*, *adolescens*, *infans*, *patrueilis*, *senex*, *vindeus*, *index*, *princeps*; and all those before-named, that are compounded with *Cano*, *capió*, *facio*, and *specio*, for in their signification they rather denote quality than substance, and sometimes we find them joyned to Substantives of the Neuter gender, as, *Ales plumbum* in *Silius*, and *infans saxum* in *Ovid*. Others of these call'd Commons, are properly Substantives, as, *bos*, *canis*, *sacerdos*, but (according to *Sanctius* and *Scioppius*) they are only Masculines, and when an Adjective of the Feminine is joyned with any of them, it is by a *Syllepsis* of the word *Femina*: or if any of them be properly Feminines, then a Masculine Adjective is used with them by a *Syllepsis* of the word *Mas*; However it must be diligently observed

ved in which *Gender* they are most used by good Authors; as, *vates, civis, canis*, are familiarly used in the Feminine Gender, *magur* and *miles* seldom or never.

(7) These Epicenes have their *Gender* by the special Rules following, as *hic passer, pavo, hæc pica, hirundo, vulpes. Liberi* Children, and *Casulus* a Whelp, and *Pullus* a Foal, are accounted Epicenes.

(8) All words that end in *i* and *y* and *u* are Neuters, as, *Moly, gummi, sinapi. Frugi* is a corruption of *frugis*, the Genitive case of the old word *frux*; *frugem* and *fruge* are Read, and *bonæ frugis Voss*. But it is Elegantly used also as an Adjective, and oppos'd to *nequiam*; or it is the Dative Case, and the Verb *est*, or the Adjective *idoneus* is understood, *Danes*. Except from this Rule proper Names that are not declin'd in *Latin*, call'd Barbarous words; such as *Adam, Enoch, Noe, Abraham*, &c. and the Angelical Orders, *Cberubim* and *Seraphim*, Masculine.

Nouns that end in *u* are Neuters, and undeclin'd in the Singular Number, but Regularly declined in the Plural. *Mille, χίλιε, a thousand*, is undeclin'd in the Singular, but declin'd in the Plural.

C H A P. IV.

*Of the Gender of Nouns Substantives
Common.*

THere are three special Rules whereby to know the Gender of Nouns Appellatives.

The First Special Rule.

All Nouns Substantives Common that do not encrease in the Genitive Case, are of the Feminine Gender.

From this Rule are several Exceptions.

Some are Masculines.

1. Greek Nouns in *es* of the first Declension, such as *Cometes, Sorites, Pyrites, &c.* (1)

2. All Nouns that end in *nis*, such as *panis, penis, crinis, ignis, &c.* But these four are sometimes found in the Feminine Gender, *annis, clunis, finis, funis.* (2)

3. These Nouns following that end in *is*,
Callis, caulis, follis, collis mensis, & ensis,
Cassis, fascis, torris, sentis, piscis, & unguis,
Et vectis, postis, fustis, sic orbis, & axis;
And *vepris* if it be found in the Singular Number. (3)

4. All Nouns that end in *er*, as *liber, ager, venter.* (4)

5. All Nouns that end in *us*, as, *annus, fructus;* except these Feminines following,

Porticus, alvus, humus, colus, adde & acusq; domusq;
Carbasus, & tribus, & vannus, ficusq; manusq;. (5)

And

And certain Greek Nouns in *us*, as *Papyrus, synodus, methodus, exodus, periodus*. (6)

Except also these four Doubtfuls, *grossus, specus, penus* and *phaselus*.

Except also *virus* and *pelagus* that are Neuters, and *vulgus* that is both Masculine and Neuter.

Some are Neuters.

1. All Nouns that end in *e*, and are of the Third Declension, as *mare, rete*.

2. All that end in *on*, or in *um*, as *barbiton, ovum*.

3. Three that end in *es*, *Hippomanes, nepenthes, cacoethes*.

Some are Doubtful.

Corbis, item torquis, restis, scrobis atq; canalis.

Some Commons.

Vates atque canis, testis, civisque sodalis;

Hostis item.

Notes

Notes on CHAP. IV.

1. **A** *Romatites* is used in the Feminine gender, with respect to the general word *Gemma*. Otherwise these words being of the Masculine gender in the *Greek*, retain it in *Latin*: But if they change their Termination, many of them change their gender, as, *Charta, margarita, metreta, cochlea, &c.*

2. Yet these four are better used in the Masculine gender.

3. Yet some of these may be sometimes found in the Feminine gender; as, *per devias calles*, Liv. *Mugilis, anguis, vermis* belong to the Epicenes. *Affinis, juvenis, extorris, patruelis, perduellis*, are rather Adjectives than Substantives in their Nature; and so are *Natalis, annalis, bipennis, jugalis, majalis, molaris, &c.* having respect to the general word understood. Yea *aqualis* seems to respect the word *urceus*. *Voss.*

4. *Mater* belongs to the general Rule. *Linter* is usually in the Feminine.

5. Yet *Alnus, colus, carbasus* are sometimes found in the Masculine gender. *Ficus* for a Disease is of the Masculine gender, and second Declension; but for a Tree or the Fruit, it is of the Feminine gender, but either of the Second or Fourth Declension; *Dicemus ficus quæ scimus in arbore nasci; Dicemus ficos, Cæciliane, tuos*, Mart.

6. As also *Byssus, abyssus, chrysellus, arctus*; and so *atomus, dipshengus, cremus*, but that these three last seem rather to be Adjectives in their Nature, and to be used in the Feminine gender, with respect to the general word understood. These *Greek* Nouns that end in *us* do usually keep the gender that they have in the *Greek*; and so *Paradisus, tomus, hyacinthus, &c.* are Masculines for the most part; *biblus, hyssopus, papyrus, &c.* are Feminines. But inasmuch as very many *Greek* Nouns in *os* are of the Common gender, they are used both as Masculines and Feminines in *Latin*, as *Sylisus, caminus, balanus, barbitus, &c.* Some are Masculine in the *Greek* and yet Feminine in *Latin*, such are *costus pharus, &c.* Some Feminine in *Greek* and Masculine in *Latin*, as *Camelus, &c.* The names of precious Stones (such as, *Beryllus, chrysolitus, chrysoprasius, opalus, sapphirus, smaragdus, toparius*) are used sometimes in the Masculine gender, and sometimes in the Feminine, with respect to the general word *λίθος*, which is Common in *Greek*.

C H A P. V.

*Of the Second Special Rule.**The Second Special Rule.*

ALL Nouns Substantives Common, that encrease long up, in the Genitive Case, are of the Feminine Gender; such as *virtus*, Gen. *virtutis*.

From this Rule are several Exceptions.

Some are Masculines.

1. These Monosyllables following ;

As, mas, vas vadis, & sal, sol, ren, splen, quoq; pes, pras, Flos, ros, mos, dens, mons, pons, fons quoque Mascula, item grex. (1)

2. All Nouns of more than one syllable ending in *n* ; such as *Lichen, Delphin, Pæan, Agon. (2)*

3. All that end in *o*, and signifie any bodily thing ; as *imucro, pugio, scipio, titio, ligo, harpago, perduellio* when it signifies a Traytor: To which must be added the words *fermo* and *arrhabo*, and Nouns that denote Number ; such as *unio, duernio, ternio, quaternio, senio. (3)*

4. All Nouns that end in *er, or, and os. (4)*

5. These that follow ;

Hydrops, atque gigas, elephas, adamasque, tapesque, Magnes & thorax, & cum lebece meridies. (5)

Some are Neuters.

1. All Nouns of more than one syllable ending in *al*, or in *ar* ; as *capital*, *animal*, *laquear*, *calcar* ; and one in *c*, which is *halec*. (6)

2. These Monosyllables following ;

Rus, *thus*, *jus*, *crus*, *pus* monosyllaba, *mel*, *fel*,
Lac, *far*, *cor*, *ver*, *as*, *vas* *vasis*, *os* *offis* & *oris*. (7)

Some are Doubtful.

Scrobs, *rudens*, *stirps* pro *trunco*, *calx*, *adde diesq* ; (8)

Some are Commons.

Heres, *atque parens*, *author*, *dux*, *susque*, *sacerdos*,
Bos *itidem*, *custos*, *fur*. (9)

Notes on CHAP. V.

(1) *V* *Ir* and *Rex*, so also *Car*, *Ser*, *Cres*, *Tros*, *Thrax*, *Phryx*, and also *Bes*, belong to the general Rule of Masculines, Ch. 3. *Glis*, *seps*, *gryps* belong to the Rules about Epicenes. *Sal* for *Sal* is sometimes of the Neuter gender in the singular number, but when it is used to signify *Wisdom* or *Ingenuity*, it is always Masculine in both numbers.

(2) *Syren* is Feminine by the general Rule, Ch. 3.

(3) When *Perduellio* signifies *Treason* or *Rebellion*, it is of the Feminine gender, as are all Nouns that end in *io*, and come from Nouns or Verbs, as *portio*, *tatio*, *concio*, *contagio*, *optio*, *ditio*, *reigio*, *legio*, *lethio*, *rebellio*, *oratio*, &c.

(4) *Soror* and *uxor* are Feminines by the general Rule, Ch. 3. It seems that many Nouns in *or* were anciently Commons, (as *Author* is to this day) as we read *Mulier defensor*, *Ulp.* and *Dea sponsor*, *Ovid.* Yea, it seems that some Nouns in *or* were Neuters ;

as, nec calor nec frigus metuo, Plaur. And particularly Adjectives of the Comparative degree, as *Bethum Punicum posterior*, Prisc. *Spinter* is Neuter. Oxf. Gr.

(5) And if there be any other words that end in *as* and make their Genitive in *antis*; or in *es*, and make their Genitive in *etis*. Some add other words in *x* encreasing long, as *spadix, urpis*: The Compounds of *As*, and such words as denote the parts of the word *As*, are Masculines by the general Rule, Chap. 3. And so are the names of People. *Nycticorax, Phœnix, Bombyx, Volvox* belong to the Epicenes.

(6) *Halex* is Feminine, from which we read *Halecem*, Mart.

(7) The Nominative of old was *Laſſe*; *Laſſelaſſi non ſipilius*, Plaur.

(8) *Stirps* for a Progeny is Feminine, and so is *Calx* when it signifies Lime or Chalk. *Dies* is best used in the Feminine Gender in the ſingular number, and in the Masculine in the Plural, although it is indeed of the Doubtful in both Numbers, *O reliquis omnes dies!* Cic.

(9) *Dux* and his Compounds, *tradux* and *redux*, ſcem rather Adjectives in their Nature, and ſo do *illex* and *exilex* and *bifrons*. *Sacerdos* is rather of the Masculine Gender. *Sacerdotiſſa* is the Feminine. *Gel. Fur* is better used in the Masculine Gender. That of *Plautus, Fures eſſis ambæ*, may be made good by a Syntheſis of the word *Feminae*. Danſ.

Animans is the only Noun Subſtantive that is found used in all the Genders. Rhen.

C H A P. VI.

Of the Third Special Rule.

THe Third Special Rule is, All Nouns Substantives Common, that encrease short down, in the Genitive Case, are of the Masculine Gender.

From this Rule there are several Exceptions.

Some are Feminines.

1. All Nouns Substantives Common, that are of more than Two Syllables a-piece, ending in *do*, or in *go* in the Nominative Case, and making *dinis* or *ginis* in the Genitive; such as *dulcedo*, *imago*, *compago*. (1)

2. Some Nouns ending in *x*; such are,
Appendix, *carex*, *coxendix*, atq; *supellex*,
Forfex, atq; *filix*. (2)

3. All Greekish Nouns that end in *as*, or in *is*; as, *lampas*, *cuspis*; and one Latin Noun in *us*, *pecus* making *pecudis* in the Genitive Case.

4. These that follow;

Grando, *fides*, *compes*, *teges*, & *seges*, *arbor*, *hyemsq;*
Sic forceps, *findon*, *icon*. (3)

Some are Neuters.

1. All Nouns Substantives Common, that end in *a*, in *en*, in *ar*, in *ur*, in *us*, or in *ut*, and signifie a thing void of Life; such as *problema*, *carmen*, *jubar*, *jecur*, *corpus*, *caput*: Except *pecten* and *furfur*, which are Masculines. (4)

2. These

2. These four Nouns following, that end in *er*; *cadaver*, *iter*, *tuber*, *uber*; and all the Names of Plants and Fruits; and one word in *ar*, *Bacchar*; and three in *or*, *Agnor*, *Marmor*, *Ador*; and one in *us*, *pecus*, *pecoris*. (5)

Some are used Doubtfully.

~~Exilis~~, ~~Obex~~, ^{Julius} ~~adeps~~, *cinis*, & *cum cortice*, *pnemex*,
Imbrex, *margo*, *filex*, & *onyx*, *cum traduce*, *varix*,
Sandyx. (6)

Some are Commons, at least in Signification, if not in Structure: Such are,

~~Præsul~~, *præsul*, *homo*, ^{Regileh} *nemo*, *quoq*; *martyr*, & *angur*,
Antistes, *miles*, *pedes*, *interpretes*, *comes*, *hospes*,
Sic ales, *præses*, *princeps*, *auceps*, *eques*, *obses*.

And many Nouns made from Verbs: Such as,

Conjux, *judex*, *vindex*; especially compounded of,
Cano, *capiō*, *facio*, *specio*.

But many of these are of an Adjective Nature; only there are rarely any Substantives found for them of the Neuter Gender; and themselves have no Neuter Plural. (7)

Notes on CHAP. VI.

(1) *C* *Uvido* is found amongst the Poets of the Masculine Gender; but more usually of the Feminine. (2) *Pellex* is Feminine by the general Rule, Chap. 3. *Hylrix* is refer'd to the Rule following about Epicenes. Some reckon *pecudis* amongst the words that want a Nominative Case, because *pecus* seldom or never occurs. *Danef. Plautus* uses *pecu*, Pluraliter *pecua*.

(3) *Gorgon*, *Amazon*, and *Virgo*, are Feminines by the general Rule. *Alegon* and *Aedon* are referred to the Epicenes. (4) *Fubar*, *guttur*, and *murmur* were anciently used in the Masculine. (5) To which may be added one in *x*, *Atriplex*, which is used sometimes, if not only in the Neuter. *Verber* is Neuter, but out of use. *Iter* is contracted of *Itiner*, yet to be seen in *Plautus*, *Tuber* for a *Swelling* or *Mushroom* is Neuter, for a *Tree* is Feminine; but for the *Fruit* of that *Tree*, it is Masculine. *Oxf. Gram.* *Cucumber* is Masculine, *vox antiquis ignota*, *ibid.* To this Rule therefore do belong *Siler*, *suber*, *aer*, *gingiber*, *laser*, *cicer*, *piper*, *fiser*, *liver*, *papaver*. *Bacchar* is only Neuter, but *Baccharis* is Feminine.

(6) *Onyx* when it is used for a *Gemm*, is usually of the Feminine Gender; but when it signifies the Stone call'd *Onychites*, or a Vessel made of that Stone, it is of the Masculine Gender most usually. The Compound *Sardonix* is used by the Poets mostly in the Masculine, and by Orators in the Feminine. *Danef. Sandyx* is confest to be Feminine, but it is used also in the Masculine. *Interdum Libyci fucantur sandyche pinna.* *Hor.* [7] Amongst these, *Nemo*, *augur*, *antistes*, *miles*, *comes*, *ales*, *conjux*, *judex*, *vindex* are Commons in Construction i.e. found joyn'd with Adjectives both of the Masculine and Feminine Gender. But so is not *homo*, as *Danefius* contends; yet *nemo* a Compound of it is so found. *Vid. ch. 3.* of the Commons compounded of Verbs.

C H A P. VII.

Of *Epicenes*; and of some that vary their Gender.

NOuns *Common*, *Doubtful* and *Epicene*, all agree in this, That in one word they are of two Genders; so are *parens*, *margo*, *limax*. The *Doubtful* differ from the other two, because they have no respect to Sex, which *Commons* and *Epicenes* have: But the *Epicenes* are (*supercommunia*) somewhat more *Common* than the *Commons* themselves. For the *Epicenes*, whether they be of one Gender only, as *aquila*, or of two, as *limax*, signify both Sexes under one Gender (as *astuta vulpes*, *auriti lepores*, *lubricus limax*, is spoken both of the Male and the Female) but so do not the *Commons*; for *Charus parens* respects a Father only, and not a Mother. There are then, two sorts of *Epicenes*, viz. Such as comprehend both Sexes under one Gender, as *hic passer*; and such as are of two Genders, as *hic vel hec limax*: And these latter are distinguish'd from *Commons* in this, That in both Genders they signify both Sexes indifferently. So that the *Epicene* is no distinct Gender, and the Rules for the Gender of *Epicenes*, are the same with the *Three Special Rules*, for the Gender of common Nouns: But, because some of them vary from those *Special Rules*, they are now to be particularly noted. (1)

Many Nouns Substantives vary their Gender, as they vary their signification. (2)

Many Nouns vary their Gender with their Number. (3)

Notes on CHAP. VII.

(1) **A** *Leyon*, *adōn* and *lagōpus*, which should be Masculines by Rule, are Feminines. And *Anas*, *bubo*, *culex*, *bystrix*, *navrix* are Doubtful.

Bombyx for a *Worm*, *Cenchrus* for a *Serpent*, *glis*, *gryps*, *mugilis*, *mus*, *nefrens*, *nycticorax*, *phœnix* for a *Bird*, *seps* for a *Serpent*, *vermis*, *volvox*, which should be Feminines by Rule, are Masculines. And *Anguis*, *dama*, *grus*, *limax*, *lynx*, *palumbes*, *serpens*, *volucris*, are Doubtful. *Oxf. Gram.*

(2) Such as *Acus*, Genitive *acūs* a *Needle*, Feminine; *acus*, Genitive *aci* a *Fish*, Masculine; *acus*, Genitive *aceris* *Chaff*, Neuter; *Adria* the *City* Feminine; *adria* the *Sea* Masculine; *Bidens* a *Fork* Masculine, a *Hogrel* Feminine; (but indeed this word is more properly an Adjective) *Bombyx* the *Worm* Masculine, *Silk* Feminine; *calx* a *heel* Masculine (and sometimes Feminine amongst the Poets) *calx* *Chalk* or *Lime* always Feminine; *Cenchrus* Genitive *Cenchrus* the *Serpent* Masculine, Genitive *Cenchridis* the *Bird* Feminine; *Ficus* Genitive *fici* the *Disease* Masculine, *ficus* Genitive *ficūs* or *fici* for the *Tree* or the *Fruit* is Feminine; *Frons* Genitive *frondis* a *Leaf* Feminine Gender, *frontis* a *Forehead* Doubtful; *Glis* Genitive *gliris* a *Dormouse* Masculine, Genitive *gliris* *mouldiness*, Genitive *glitis* *Porters Clay*, Genitive *glissis* a *Thistle*, all Feminines; *Phœnix* a *Phœnician*, and *Phœnix* the *Bird* Masculine, *Phœnix* the *Palm-Tree* Feminine; *seps* a *Serpent* Masculine, a *Hedge* Feminine; *stirps* a *Stem* or *Stalk* usually Masculine, for a *Stock* or *Progeny* always Feminine; *stips* a *Stake* Masculine, *Wages* Feminine; *tuber* a *Swelling* or *Mushroom* Neuter, for a *Tree* Feminine, for the *Fruit* of that *Tree* Masculine.

(3) Masculine Singular, Neuter Plural; *Avernus*, *Dindimus*, *Gargarus*, *Ismarus*, *Mœnalus*, *Massicus*, *Pangæus*, *Sibilus*, *Tenerus*, *Tartarus*, *Taygetus*. But *Sibilus* is rather Adjective, *colla Sibila*. Virg. *Gargarum* is also read.

Masculine Singular, Masculine and Neuter Plural; *jocus* and *locus*: *Locum* is read.

Feminine Singular, Neuter Plural; *Pergamus*, *supellex*, *carbassus*, *Hierosolyma*. But we read *Pergamum* and *supellectile*.

To these Rhenius adds *Dialectica*, and other Names of Arts.

Neuter Sing. Masculine Plu. *Argos*, *cælum*, *cicer*, *porrum*, *fifer*.

Neuter Sing. Masculine and Neut. Plu. *Rastrum*, *frænum*, *filum*.

Neuter Singular, Feminine Plural; *Nundinum*, *epulum*, *balneum*, *delisium*, but there are Feminines of all these.

CHAP.

C H A P. VIII.

Of the Cases of Nouns.

Case is the special Termination or Ending of a *Noun*, *Pronoun*, or *Participle* in *Latin*.

Nouns have Six *Cases* in each Number, the *Nominative*, *Vocative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Ab-lative*. (1)

But it is to be noted, That according to the usage of the *Latin* Tongue, some *Nouns* are not varied into any casual Terminations at all. And these are of two sorts: *First*, Such as in one Termination are applied to all *Cases*: These are properly *Aptotes*. (2)

Secondly, Such as in one Termination are applied to two or three *Cases* only: These are invariable or undeclined, but not properly *Aptotes*. (3)

There are also some *Nouns* that are found used but in one *Case*. (4) Others in two. (5) Others in three. (6) Others in four. (7) Others in five. (8)

Note also, That some *Nouns* are defective in *Case*, in the Singular Number. (9) And others in the Plural. (10)

The property of the *Nominative Case* is, to come before the Verb, as *Magister dat*, *The Master giveth*.

The *Vocative Case* is used in Calling or Speaking to, and hath often the sign *o* joyn'd to it; as, *o amici*, *O Friends*.

The *Genitive Case* hath this Sign *of* before it; as, *notitia Grammaticæ*, *the Knowledge of Grammar*.

The *Dative Case* hath this Sign *to*, and sometimes *for* before it; as, *dat notitiam pueris*, *he giveth Knowledge to Boys*.

The *Accusative Case* followeth the Verb; as, *dat notitiam*, *he giveth Knowledge*. The

The Ablative Case is known by the Prepositions that serve to an Ablative Case; such as, *In, with, on, from, by, of, out of, for, concerning, before, or in presence, and than*, after an Adjective or an Adverb of the Comparative degree. Most of which Prepositions are oftner understood than express'd. An example of all which may be found in this one Sentence; *O Friends, the Master giveth the Knowledge of Grammar to Boys by Rules*: or in this; *O Master, Boys get to themselves Rules of Grammar with Pleasure.*

Notes on CHAP. VIII.

(1) **A**LL Nouns have naturally all Cases in their signification; though according to the usage of the Language, many are defective in casual Terminations. The Greek is said to want the Ablative Case, yet Cicero joyns a Latin Adjective of the Ablative Case, with a Greek Substantive said to be of the Dative; *nunquam fui in majore aroetia*: And when the Latins use Greek Words, they use them in the Ablative Case, as *Penelope melius, melius torquetis Arachne*. Juv. The Nominative Singular is called *Rectus*, the rest *Obliqui*. The Vocative is commonly the same with the Nominative, and is best placed next to it. The Ablative hath its Name *ab auferendo*, from taking away; but it is used also to express Comparison, the manner, the matter, the cause, or the instrument; so that the name is too narrow for it. *Oxf. Gram.* The Ablative is sometimes called *Sextus* or *Latinus*; and when it is used without a Preposition, it is called *Septimus*; so is the Dative when it is used instead of the Accusative with a Preposition.

(2) Of this sort are (1) All Cardinal Nouns of number from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusively: Also *mille* the Adjective (*χιλίων*) is Plural only and undeclined; but it is used in all Cases and Genders: It hath usually an Adverb joyned with it, as, *his mille hominum*. (2) All Clauses of Sentences, and Verbs and Adverbs taken Substantively. (3) All Names of Letters, as *Alpha, Beta*, &c. (4) All Barbarous Nouns, as, *Adam, Noe, Seth*, &c. (5) The Orders of Angels which are Plurals, as, *Seraphim, Cherubim*. (6) The Names of Towns and Villages that end in *i* or *y*, as, *Aixi, Illiturgi, Apy, Dory*. (7) These that follow; *Nequam, pondo, frugi*,
(if

(if it be an Adjective) tot, totidem, quot, quocumq; aliquot, bu-
juscemodi, hujusmodi, cujusdammodi, cujusmodi, cujusqueusmodi,
cujusmodicunq; cujusquemodi, ejuscemodi, ejusmodi, ejusdammodi,
illiusmodi, istiusmodi, aliusmodi or alimodi: To which add, nauci,
nihil, mancipi, if they be Adjectives and not old Genitive Cases.

(3) *Eas, nefas, nil, nihil, necesse, necessum, instar, virtus, coccyus, specus, opus, subter, hic, fructus, genus*; and some Nouns in *i*; as, *Gummi, semi, summi, sibi*; and some in *e*; as, *volupe, cete, cape*; also *tempe* and *mele* (Plurals) are used in the Nominative and Accusative Case: *Mille* the Substantive (*χίλιος*) and *mane* are used in the Nominative, Accusative, and Ablative Singular; but this *mille* is declined in the Plural Number, *Mille & millia, millium*, &c. and hath usually an Adjective joyned with it, as, *Quatuor, millibus passibus progressi, duo millia hominum*: Sometimes very anomalously, *Naves decies centum millia*. Just. *Duo millia crucibus affixi*, Curr. To these last may be added Nouns in *u* of the Fourth Declension, such as, *Cornu, gelu, genu, astu* for a City; most of which yet are varied into all Cases in the Plural Number. To these that are used only in the Nominative and Accusative Case, *Rhenius* adds *prasso* (of the old Adjective *prastus*;) others make it an Adverb, as also *mane* seems sometimes to be. Note that any of these invariable Nouns may be used in the Vocative Case, to which our Speech may be directed.

(A) As in the Nominative, *Expes, satias, dammas, potis*, in the Neuter *pote*; but *potis* is often joyned to a Neuter Substantive, and *pote* to a Masculine or Feminine: *hoc habet peculiare Martin*. In the Genitive, *Dicis*; as, *Dicis causâ*; for Fashion sake, *pro forma nauci*, except it be an Adjective according to *Priscian*; for *naucum* is rarely read. In the Dative Singular, *Despicatui, divisui, venui, frustratui, indutui, iriusui, iudificatui, ostentui*; though these probably had a Nominative Case of old, and *Vossius* thinks them capable of an Ablative. In the Accusative, *bilicem* and *trilicem*; *Bilex* and *trilex* are out of use. In the Accusative Plural *Incitas*, (or rather *Insitias*, of *Infiteur*) *incitas*, and according to *Vossius*, *inferias*. But *Incitas* is rather an Adjective, and *lineas* or *calces* is understood; for *incitos* (Sub. *terminos*) and *incita* (Sub. *loca*) are also read. To these some add *Prosopias, fugas* and *famas*. In the Vocative Singular and Plural, *maëe* and *maëti* are usual, *maëtus* very rare. In the Ablative Singular, *Noëtu, natu, jussu, injussu, promptu, permissu, vocatu, datu, mandatu, affatu, allegatu, oratu, precatu, invitatu, hortatu, accitu, accersitu, monitu, admonitu, coactû, objectu, inconsultu, instinctu, concessu, missu, libitu*,

libitū, relatu, fiftu, fretu, peccatu, lucu and *diu*, for *luce* and *die*: Add to these *Ergō* (ab ^{ergo}) and *ingratiis*. The Nominative Singular of these Words of the Fourth Declension are gone out of use, but the Nominative and Accusative Plural of some of them are sometimes found, as *monitus numinum reverere*.

(5) In the Nominative and Ablative Singular *Vesper* and *vespere*. *Vesperis* is an Adverb. In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, *tibi* and *tabo*, *spontis* and *sponde*. In the Dative and Ablative Singular, *obtentui* and *obtentu*, *nuptui* and *nuptu*, *irrisui* and *irrisu*. In the Accusative and Ablative Singular, *rogatum* and *rogatu*. In the Nominative and Accusative Plural, *suppetiæ* and *suppetias*.

(6) In the Nominative, Genitive and Accusative Singular, *Tantundem*, *tantidem tantundem*. In the Dative, Accusative, Ablative, *Arbitratui*, *arbitratum*, *arbitratu*.

(7) As, *Impetis*, *impete*, *impetibus*, ab antiquo *impes*. *Dica*, *dicam*, *dicā*, *dicas*. *Nemo*, *nemini*, *neminem*, *nemine*.

(8) *Grates* wants only the Genitive Plural. Many Nouns want the Vocative, viz. All such to which we cannot direct our Speech: Such are *Interrogatives*, *Indefinites*, *Relatives*, *Negatives*, *Partitives*, and all Pronouns except *Tu*, *meus*, *nostras* and *noster*; But amongst the Pronouns, only *Ego* wants the Vocative Case, according to *Oxf. Gram.*

(9) *Ambage*, *crate* and *fauce* are ordinarily used only in the Ablative Singular, but have all the Cases in the Plural. *Plus*, *pluris*, (and sometimes *plurem* and *plure*) are used in the Singular Number, but it has all the Cases in the Plural. In the Singular we read only *verberis* and *verbere*, *jugeris* and *jugere*, (ab antiquo *juger*) *feminis* and *femine*, but they are entire in the Plural. *Vicis*, *dapis*, *disionis*, *frugis*, *precis*, *opis*, *sordis* want the Nominative Singular, but are entire in the Plural, unless *vicis* want the Genitive. So do also *proceris* and *primoris*; for *procer* and *primor* are out of use. *Vis* wants the Dative Singular, and is entire in the Plural. *Situs* wants the Genitive and Dative Singular, and hath only the Accusative Plural. *Astus* is used in the Nominative and Ablative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative Plural.

(10) *Os oris*, *as*, *mare*, *sol* and *fax* have all the Cases in the Singular, and want only the Genitive Plural. *Hordeum*, *far*, *forum*, *mel*, *mulsum*, *mustum*, *defrutum*, *vinum*, *lutum*, *solum*, *electrum*, *sensum*, *rus*, *thus* have all Cases in the Singular, but want the Genitive, Dative and Ablative Plural; and so do *soboles* and *labes*, and all Nouns of the Fifth Declension, except *Res*, *species*, *facies*, *acies* and *dies*. *Hyems* is entire in the Singular Number, and wants only the Dative and Ablative Plural. *Vofis*.

C H A P. IX.

Of the Nominative and Vocative Cases.

THe Substantive that comes next before the Verb, and answereth to the Question *who* or *what*, made upon the Verb, shall be the Nominative Case. For the most part it hath the Sign *a*, *the*, or *an*, before it; as, *a Man laugheth; an Ape imitaterh; the Master teacheth*. But sometimes it hath no Sign at all before it; as, *Grass withereth, Gold is melted*. Also if a proper Name, a Pronoun, or a piece of a Sentence come as Nominative Case before the Verb, they have no Sign at all.

The Substantive that is the Nominative Case to a Verb, doth not always stand before the Verb, but sometimes after it: Yet still it answereth to the Question *who* or *what*. (1)

Although the property of the Nominative Case be, to come immediately before the Verb, yet many times one word or more come between them: But still it answereth to the Question *who* or *what*. (2)

If the Verb be of the Infinitive Mood, the Substantive that comes before it shall be of the Accusative Case: And this is most usual and elegant, when the Conjunction *that* comes before the Substantive: And then the Substantive following the Verb, having Relation to the Substantive going before the Verb, shall be the Accusative Case also. (3)

The

The Vocative Case is used, when we call or speak to a Person or a Thing.

The Vocative Case is no Essential part of a Sentence in *Syntax*, but is set absolutely, and properly govern'd of no Word, although the Interjection *o* is often joyned with it; as *Master*, or *O Master!*

The Vocative Case makes the Verb to which it is directed, to be of the same Number with it self; and always to be of the Second Person; as, *Salve Magister, plaudite Pueri.* (4)

Notes on CHAP. IX.

(1) **T**He Nominative Case stands after the Verb, when a Question is asked; when the Verb is of the Imperative Mood; when *it* or *there*, *nor* or *neither* come before the *English* of the Verb: Also when the Nominative Case supplies the place of *if*, as *bad I known*. By a Poetical Transposition, the Nominative Case often stands after the Verb, though construed before it.

(2) Oftentimes a Genitive Case, or a Gerund in *di*, an Adjective, a Participle, a Conjunction, or a Relative, with their Clauses may stand between the Nominative Case and the Verb; as, *The Learning of the Master is known; A Man desirous of Learning laboureth.*

(3) The Infinitive Mood hath always an Accusative Case before it, either express or understood, although many times it would be harsh to express it in *English*. The Accusative Cases *me*, *te*, *se*, *illum*, and their Plurals, are very often understood before an Infinitive Mood: But sometimes they are express in *Latin*, when we cannot handsomely express them in *English*; as, *mori me malim*, Ter. *Visus sum me audire vocem loquentis*, Plaut. *Qua sese optavis parere hic divitiis*, Ter. *Omnes homines qui se praeferre student ceteris animalibus*, Sal. But when the Conjunction *that* (*quod* or *ut*) cometh before the Verb, it is commonly and most elegantly made by the Accusative Case and the Infinitive Mood; though sometimes *quod* 97

or *ut* are expressed, and then the Noun is in the Nominative Case. And not only *quod* or *ut*, but also *ne* and *quin* sometimes make the Nominative Case to be turned into the Accusative, before an Infinitive Mood, as *Prohibuit eum scribere*, id est, *ne scriberet*; non *dubito Christum id dixisse*, id est, *quin Christus dixerit*. If a Nominative Case come before the Infinitive Mood, it is in imitation of the Greeks, who use that *Syntax* often. So in *Latin* they say, *Cupio esse doctus*. *Uxor invidi Fovis esse nescis*, Hor. *Phaëlus ait fuisse navium celerrimus*, Catul. *Scu pius Aeneas eripuisse ferunt*, Ovid.

(4) The *Atticks* amongst the *Greeks* did often use the Vocative Case instead of the Nominative, and the Nominative instead of the Vocative; both which the *Latins* sometimes imitate. The Vocative for the Nominative, as, *Quibus Hector ab oris expectate venis*, for *expectatus*, Vir. *Censoremve tuum vel quod trabeate salutas*, Pers. The Nominative for the Vocative, as *Adsis latine Bacchus dator*, for *Bacche*, Virg. *Vos o patricius sanguis*, Pers. for *patricie*. *Da meus ocellus*. Some make this an *Atticism*. *Audi Deus noster*.

CHAP.

C H A P. X.

Of the Accusative Case.

THe Substantive that comes next after a Verb of an Active signification, with the signs *a*, *an*, or *the*, or without any sign, will commonly be the Accusative Case. (1)

Yet some Verbs of an Active and Transitive signification, do take after them a Genitive Case. (2)

Some a Dative. (3)

Some an Ablative. (4)

Also when a Substantive immediately follows any of the Prepositions that govern an Accusative Case, it will be of the Accusative Case. (5)

But sometimes both the Verb and the Prepositions that govern the Accusative Case, and the Accusative Case it self, that is govern'd of the Verb, is understood. (6)

Notes on CHAP. X.

(1) **B**UT Verbs Substantives, which are pure Neuters; as, *Sum*, *es*, *est*, *sisto*, *existo*: Also many Verbs Passives (especially of Calling) as, *dicor*, *vocor*, *salutor*, *habeor*, *existimor*, *videor*: Also Verbs of gesture; as, *incedo*, *sedeo*, *cubo*, *dormio*, will have after them a Nominative Case; as, *Deus est communis parens*. *Moses dicitur Propheta*. *Jacobus sedet princeps inter Apostolos*. This must needs be so, because the word going before the Verb, and the word going after it have a Relation one to the other, and there is an Apposition in the Sense.

[2] *Satago*, *miseror*, *miseresco*, take after them a Genitive Case: *Satago* is compounded of *satis* and *ago*: *Satis* is an old Neun, and makes its Comparative degree *satius*, Prisc. *Nunc agitas tute sat suarum*

suarum rerum, Plaut. *Misereor* and *miserescō* sometimes govern a Dative Case; but usually a Genitive, after the manner of the Greeks, whose Verbs that signify Passion or Affection are used with a Genitive Case, by Virtue of a Preposition understood, governing a Genitive Case: Also certain Verbs of *abstaining*, *admiring*, *driving away*, *caring for*, *neglecting*, *beginning* and *ending*, *ruling*, *pardon- ing*, *freeing*, *partaking*, govern a Genitive Case of the Noun that follows them, after the manner of the Greeks, who govern'd that Genitive Case of a Preposition understood: But the *Latins* having no Preposition governing a Genitive Case (tho *ex* is found so doing in *Vitruvius*) we must suppose the Genitive Case to be govern'd of some Noun understood; as, *Discrucior animi*; that is, *Dolore*, *cogitatione*, or *mente animi* (for *Plautus* says, *Nullam mentem animi habeo*) *miserere mei*; that is, *Causâ mei*. Thus, *Desine mollius querelarum*, *abstineto irarum*, Hor. *Tempus desistere pugnae*, Virg. *Regnavit populorum*, Hor. *Fustitiae prius mirer bellique laborum*, Virg. *Paternum servum sui participat consilii*, Plaut. *Virginitatis interfecta curant*, Apul. *Nec sermonis fallerer tamen*, Plaut. *Sepossit ciceris nec longæ invidit avenæ*, Hor. *Erubescit fortunæ*, Curt. *Fasidit mei*, *Studet tui*, &c. *Reminiscor*, *obliviscor*, *recordor*, and *memini*, are said to govern sometimes a Genitive Case; but indeed that Genitive Case is govern'd of some Noun understood; as, *memini beneficii*; that is, *memoriam beneficii*: for so *Cicero* speaks at length; *Pueritiæ memoriam recordari ultimam: Venit in mentem, non minus potestatis, quam aequitatis tuæ*; that is, *memoria*. The Genitive Case that seems to be govern'd of *potior*, is indeed govern'd of the Noun *facultas* or *potentia* understood. The Genitive Case that is found after Verbs of *esteeming*, and also of *accusing*, *condemning*, *admonishing*, *absolving*, is governed of some Substantive understood; as, *Magni aestimabat pecuniâ*; ~~that is, aestimabat pecuniâ rem magni pretii~~; that is, *aestimabat pecuniâ rem magni pretii*. *Arguitur pigritiæ*, *Notatur avaritiæ*; that is, *crimine*; as, *Arguitur lentæ crimine pigritiæ*, Mart. The Genitive Case that is found after the Verb *sum*, when *possession*, *part*, *property* or *duty* is signified, is govern'd of some Substantive understood; as, *Vestis est patris*, that is, *Vestis est vestis patris*; *est adolescentis*, that is, *Officium, munus*, or *proprium*, as *Cicero* speaks at length, *Est sapientis proprium nihil quod panisere possis facere*: Or else *Res*, *negotium*, *opus* may be understood; as, *Est moris, vincere est laboris*. A Genitive Case is also found after *Interest* and *Refert*; but that Genitive is govern'd of *re*, according to *Priscian*, or of *Causâ* or *Gratiâ*, according to *Oxf. Gr.*

(3) Some Verbs make the Substantive that comes after them to be the Dative Case ; such are Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, and many that are compounded with *pro*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter* and *super* : As also many Verbs of *profiting* and *disprofiting*, *pleasing* and *displeasing*, *helping* and *hurting*, *trusting* and *distrusting*, *obeying* and *resisting*, *commanding* and *shewing* ; of being *angry* at, of *promising*, *owing*, *paying*, *threatning* ; such as *commodo*, *incommodo*, *proficio*, *afficio*, *nocco*, *placeo*, with his Compounds ; *doleo*, *auxilior*, *opitulator*, *patrocinor*, *medeor*, *saveo*, *gratulor*, *pareo*, *indulgeo*, *respondeo*, *frudeo*, *credo*, *fido* and his Compounds ; *obedio*, *obsequor*, *obtempero*, *morigeror*, *servio*, *famulor*, *ancillor*, *velificor*, *blandior*, *adulor*, *assenior*, *palpo*, *repugno*, *resisto*, *reluctor*, *refragor*, *reclamo*, *adversor*, *irascor*, *indignor*, *succenseo*, *offendor*, *impero*, *jubeo*, *dominor*, *mando*, *nuncio* and his Compounds ; *promitto*, *polliceor*, *spondeo*, *debeo*, *solvo*, *appendo*, *numero*, *minor*, *interminor*, *minitor*, &c.

(4) Verbs of *filling*, *emptying*, *abounding*, *wanting*, do commonly govern an Ablative Case of the thing ; such as *abundo*, *impleo*, *onero*, *exonero*, *opulento*, *paupero*, *levo*, *nudo*, *spolio*, *orbo*, *viduo*, *privo*, *egeo*, *carco*, *frustor*, *fraudo*, *emungo*, *vaco*, &c. But it is to be noted, that some of these are found antiently governing an Accusative Case after them ; as, *Nec quitquam eges*, Plaut. *Vitio vertunt mihi quia multa egeo*, & *ego illis quia nequeunt egere*, Cato. *Quid indigent potum poma dicta*, Varro. *Id quod amo careo*, Plaut. *Id tuus scater animus*, Plaut. Note, Secondly, That others of these Verbs that seem to govern an Ablative Case, are sometimes found with a Preposition ; as, *De quibus volumina impleta sunt*, Cic. *Hos nisi de fulva loculos implere moneta non licet*, Mart. And the Prepositions *de* or *cum* may be suppos'd to be understood to all the Ablative Cases, which these Verbs seem to govern. Note, Thirdly, That when some of these Verbs (such as *egeo*, *indigeo*, *scateo*, *careo*, *abundo*, *levo*, *impleo*, &c.) do govern a Genitive Case after them, (which is very usual) it is either in imitation of the Greeks, (as was before observed in this Chapter) or else that Genitive Case is govern'd of some Noun understood ; as, *Ut me omnium jam laborum levas*, Plaut. that is, *onere vel molestia*, Danes. *Careo tui*, viz. *Præsentiâ* ; *Esuro pecunia*, viz. *re* ; *Implentur vini*, viz. *Copia*, *re*, *vel liquore*. Oxf. Gr.

Likewise, *utor*, *fungor*, *frutor*, *potior*, *vescor*, *lutor*, *gaudeo*, *dignor*, *mutuo*, *muncro*, *communico*, *afficio*, *prosequor*, *impertio*, *visito*, and *vivo* for *visito*, *nitor*, *nascor*, *creor*, *flu*, *conflo*. But here is to be noted, that the five first of these are found antiently governing an

Accusative Case after them ; as, *Cetera quæ volumus uti*, Plaut. *Fundus est officium*, Ter. *Patria potitur commoda*, Ter. *Fortiter malum, qui patitur, idem post potitur bonum*, Plaut. *Eo inopia venere ut infirmissimos suorum sorte ductos vescerentur*, Tac. *Suum cuique per me uti atque frui licet*, Cato. And the reason why these five are used with an Ablative Case, is, because an Accusative Case of their own signification is understood ; together with a Preposition that governs an Ablative Case ; as, *Utor vino, fruor studiis, potior amore*, are at length, *Utor usum e vino, fruor fructum ex studiis, potior potestatem ex amore*. Voss. Note, Secondly, That the rest of these Verbs that are only found used with an Ablative Case, do not themselves govern that Ablative Case, but it is governed of the Prepositions ; *de, in, cum* or *ex*, as, *In hujus vitæ nitor salus civitatis*, Cic. *vivitur ex rapto*. Ovid. &c.

(5) These Prepositions are Thirty :

*Ad, penes, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra,
Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, & intra,
Ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, pone, secundum,
Per, circum, circa, contra, juxta, inter, ob, infra.*

And sometimes these four, *in, sub, super, subter*. Amongst these *versus, usque, circiter*, and *prope*, are rather to be accounted Adverbs, and the Preposition *ad* to be understood to them ; which Preposition is sometimes express ; as, *Ad meridiem versus*, Liv. *In forum versus*, Cic. *Ab ovo usque ad mala*, Ter. *Circiter ad meridiem. Prope ad urbem*. Oxf. Gr.

(6) Sometimes the Verb governing the Accusative Case is understood ; as, *Quid multa ? dis meliora*. The Preposition is often understood ; as, *Cetera fulvus* ; *Eo Londinum* ; *Tres annos studii* ; *abest iter diei* ; *Sex pedes longus*. Sometimes the Accusative Case is understood after the Verb ; as, *Obiit, viz. mortem* ; *Sannio servat domi* ; *Sydera Cælo præcipitans, viz. Se*. Of this more in the Figurative Syntax, and of the two Accusative Cases that sometimes follow one Verb.

C H A P. XI.

Of the Genitive Case.

WHen two Substantives come together, betokening divers things, the latter shall be the Genitive Case.

The Particle *of* is a sign of a Genitive Case, (1) whether it come after a Substantive, (2) an Adjective, (3) or Adverb, (4) as, *The Learning of the Master, Covetous of Money, the best of Men, enough of Dainties.*

If the Particle *of* come after the Adjectives *sick, weary, full, empty, worthy, unworthy, born, begotten, sprung*, or the word *need* (which in *Latin* is *opus* or *usus*) it is rather a sign of an Ablative Case. (5)

Of after a Verb or Participle is not a Sign of a Genitive Case ordinarily. But after Verbs of *accusing, condemning, warning, purging, acquitting*; as also after *pœnitet, piget, pudet, miseret* and *tædet*, and the Verb *sum*, it is sometimes a sign of a Genitive. (6)

When *of* may be turned into *by, from, with, concerning*, or *out of*, it is a sign of an Ablative Case, with the Prepositions, *a, ab, cum, de, ex*. (7)

Of before *mine, thine, his, ours, yours*, is not a sign of a Genitive Case, but makes the word in *Latin* to be made by *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, and to agree with the Substantive; as, *A Friend of mine, Amicus meus*. (8)

Of before a Participle in *ing*, is a sign of a Gerund in *di* or *do*. (9)

When

When the latter of two Substantives denotes the Possessor, it has not always the sign of before it; but instead of it, the Letter *s* is added to it, and then it is placed first; as, *The Garment of my Father, My Father's Garment.* (10)

Sometimes *of* is not a sign of any Case, but belongs to the Verb; as, *to accept of, admit of, beware of, hear of, sing of, &c.* (11)

Notes on CHAP. XI.

(1) **E**Xcept we will allow some Latin Preposition, anciently to have govern'd a Genitive Case, or say that the *Latins* put Genitive Cases after Verbs and Adjectives in imitation of the *Greeks*, who frequently suppress their Prepositions *in* and *ex*, it must needs be that every Genitive Case is govern'd of some former Substantive: But that former Substantive is frequently understood, for Brevity and Elegancy sake. As, *Cum ad Diana veneris; ventum erat ad Vesta, subaudi templum. Heboris Andromache, sub, uxor, and many the like.* The Noun *causa* or *ratio* is often understood, as the *Greek* *ἡνίκά*; as, *Cum ille se custodia diceret in castris remansisse.* Cic. *Miseret me tui, pænitet me peccati, viz. causa.* When a Genitive Case is added to a Verb, which is not govern'd of the Verb, but of some Noun Substantive understood; as, *Est pastoris, viz. Officium. Absit bidui, viz. itinere; est Roma, viz. urbe; Accusare furis, viz. crimine; Condemnatus capitis, viz. pœnâ. Est moris; Est laboris, viz. res.* When Genitive Cases are joyn'd to Adjectives, it is either in imitation of the *Greek*, or the general Substantive *res*, or *negotium* is understood; as, *plenum vini, viz. re vini, as Plautus lays, Res voluptatum, for voluptates; or else ratio* may be understood; as, *Dives agrorum. Interest patris, viz. re patris.* This Genitive Case that is govern'd of the former Substantive, hath great variety of significations. Sometimes it denotes the species; as, *Salm parva res est voluptatum in vitâ.* Pl. *Cum tentaret siqua res esset cibi, limam vomorist.* Phœd. Where *res voluptatum* and *res cibi* are put for *voluptas* and *cibus*, the word *res* comprehending under it all Pleasures,

ures and all Meats; so the Greeks το ἅπασαν τροφήν, *pro ipsa* *noctibus*. Aristoph. Hither may be refer'd those that should other-
wise have been put in the same Case with the former Substantive by
Apposition; as, *Urbs Roma, arbor fici, fons Blandusie*. Some-
times it denotes the *totum integrale*; as, *Pecus anseris, vertex*
montis: Sometimes the Subject; as, *Facundia Ciceronis, color rose*.
Sometimes the Efficient cause; as, *Virgilius, Enceades, Venus Praxi-*
relis: Sometimes the Final cause; as, *Apparatus triumphi, potio*
soporis: Sometimes the Object; as, *Cogitatio belli*: Sometimes the
Correlate; as, *Servus Dei, auditor Aristotelis, mater Johannis*.
Sometimes the Possessor; as, *Pecus Melibæi, hortus Seneca*: Some-
times Time; as, *Spasium horæ, iter bidui*: Sometimes that which
is done in Time; as, *Tempus belli, hora cænæ*: Sometimes the
Place or Continent; as, *Incola hujus urbis, vinum majoris cadi*:
Sometimes the Thing contained; as, *Cadus vini*: Sometimes the
Matter of which a thing is made; as, *Nummus argenti*. Pl. *Cra-*
teras argenti. Pers. *Auri talenta*. Virg. But this Genitive is often
made by the Ablative with *ex*, or express'd by an Adjective; as,
Mensa ex auro, or, *mensa aurea*, for *of* may be changed into *own*
of, and the word *facta* is understood: Sometimes it denotes the
Part, or the Quality; either to the Praise or Dispraise of a thing;
as, *Vir magni nasci, herba exigua radicit, Puer boni ingenii, ju-*
venis eximia spei, virgo honestæ formæ: But this Genitive is also
often made by the Ablative without a Preposition; as, *Adunco*
naso Puella, gemi dentibus caninis. The Preposition here is best
understood; yet sometimes it is express'd; as, *Vir cum magna fide*,
Pl. *Optima cum pulchris armis Romana juvenis*. Eten.

(2) Two Substantives coming together, relating to the same
thing, without any sign between them, do agree, and are put in
the same Case by Apposition, as will further appear in the *Syntax*:
otherwise no Substantive governs any Case after it but a Genitive;
except Substantives Verbals, which sometimes govern the Case of
the Verbs that they come of; as, *Traditio alteri*. Cic. *Domum*
reditionis spe sublata. Cæli. And often in Plautus, *Aditio hanc*,
gastio nos, &c.

(3) No Adjectives do properly govern any Case, except Verbals,
that sometimes govern the Case of the Verb; as, *Studiosus adul-*
terio. Plau. *Cumq; sit ignis aquæ pugna*. Ovid. *Populabundus*
agros, vitabundus hostium castra, &c. The many Adjectives
therefore that have a Genitive Case joyn'd to them, do not govern
that Genitive Case; but it is either an imitation of the Greeks,
who joyn their Genitive Case to the Adjective, and suppress the
Preposi-

Preposition *in* or *sub*; or the Genitive Case is govern'd of a Substantive understood. As the Genitive Case that seems to be governed of Adjectives, signifying *desire, knowledge, remembrance, &c.* and Verbals in *ex*, is really govern'd of *causa*, *ratione*, or *gratia*, as the Greek Genitive Case is often govern'd of *τινα* or *χαρι* understood. And the Genitive Case that is joyned to Nouns Participles, is govern'd of the Substantive *numero* understood; *Quisquis fuit ille deorum*, viz. *Ex numero deorum*. The Verbals in *na* do indeed govern a Genitive Case; but then they are rather to be accounted Nouns Substantives; as, *Pueris absinthia seipso medentes cum dare conantur*; where *medentes* is put for *medici*; as, *Studentes* for *Scholastici*, *amantes* for *amatores*: *Amans virginis* is *amator virginis*. Neither is *Time* denoted by *amans* or *appetens* any more than by *amator* or *appetitor*: Nay, *Time* is never denoted when a Genitive Case is added; *Amans virginum*, and *fugitans litium* denote a *Temper* and *Disposition*; and *amans virginis*, *fugitans lites* rather denote *Time*; *Pro certo habemus, ab huiusmodi causa fuisse, quod Adjectiva primo ceperint jungi genitivis*. Oxf. Gr.

(4) Not that the Adverbs govern a Genitive Case. Some called Adverbs, are rather Nouns; as, *Instar* (*quantum instar in ipso. Virg.*) *parum* and *paulum* of *παῦρον* *abunde* and *abundis*, *magis* and *mage*, *satis* and *sate* (*unde Sat*) are Adjectives; such as *necessis* and *necesse*, and *negotium* is understood to them. The true Adverbs, when they seem to govern a Genitive Case, do it by *Syllepsis*, because the signification of a Noun with a Preposition is found in them; as, *Longe gentium*; that is, *a longo loco vel spatio gentium*; *longe parentum exulavit*, i. e. *longe a loco parentum*; *ubi gentium*, for *quo in loco gentium*; *nusquam loci*, for *nullo in loco*; *Interea loci*, at length is, *Inter ea loci illius negotia*; *huc vicinia*; that is, *ad hoc vicinia locum*; *huc dementia*, i. e. *ad hoc negotium dementia*; *Ed impudentia*, i. e. *ea impudentia* for *ad ea*, viz. *negotia*; or *eo* may be as much as *in eo*; and so of the rest. *Partim* is an old Accusative Case, as *restim*; and is govern'd of *ad* or *quod ad* (*κατα*) or *in* understood; as, *Agessis tu in partem nunc jam hunc delude*, Pl. Oxf. Gr.

(5) The English Participle of is sometimes the same with *from*, and then it is a mark of an Ablative Case, where *a*, *ab*, *ex* or *de* are understood, and may be express; as, *Ager ex febris, lassus abstinere*, *plenus a vino*, *dignus de honore*, *natus ex Jove*, *dives ab agris* denoting the Ablative Case of the Cause, and is as much as *ob agros*. So in Italian, *Pleno de vino*, and in French, *Plein de vin*, and in English, *Full of Wine*. All Ablative Cases of the Cause, of

the *Form*, and of the *Manner* of a thing, are really govern'd of some of the said Prepositions; which is evident, in that they are sometimes found exprest; *Firmus ab equitatu*, Cic. *Intrusus a labore*, *instruitor a Philosophia*, Id. *Tam inops ego eram ab amicis*, Id. *Nuda Respublica a Magistratibus*, Id. *Usq; adeo orba fuit ab optimatibus illa consilio*, Id. *Sin eris ab isto periculo vacuus*, Id. *Non sit a vestris malis immune Caelum*, Sen. *Alter ab alterius funere maestus erat*, Ovid.

Opus is a Substantive, the same with *opera* or *negotium*, or the Greek ἔργον; as, Ἄνδ' ἐδ' ἔργον ταύτην ἐπινειδὼν μακάρι in Latin will be, *Sequibit opus hac desistere frustra*. Soph. ἀν' ἔργον ἰεὶν ἐδ' ἔργον *Nihil opus est strophis*, Aristoph. And so it is found joyn'd with an Adjective; as, *Sunt quibus unum opus est*, &c. Hor. And to govern a Genitive Case, as other Substantives do; *Hoc virtutis opus*, Virg. It is often used for a Nominative Case of the Consequent; as, *Si quid opus est, impera*, Plaut. *Quantum est tibi opus argenti*, Ter. *Emas, non quod opus est, sed quod necesse est*, Cato: As we may distinguish in English between *Needful* and *Necessary*, (though perhaps *opus* may sometimes be the same in signification with *necesse*) when we say, *Dux nobis opus est*, it is as if we should say, *Dux nobis opera, negotium, ἔργον est*, q. d. *Opera nostra in hoc ponenda est ut ducem comparemus*. As we say in the Nominative Case, *Nummi sunt mihi opus*; so Cicero says in the Accusative Case, *Nummos mihi opus esse*; that the Verb Substantive may have an Accusative Case on both sides it. And when it is joyned with an Ablative Case, it may be explain'd by *opera*, or *labor*, or *negotium*; as, *Opus est Libris* is as much as, *Opera & occupatio omnis est in libris*. The like may be said of *usus*, which is indeed a Noun Substantive of the Fourth Declension: So, *Usus est filio viginti minis*, is q. d. *Opera requiritur ut acquirantur viginti minae*: *viribus usus*, Virg. is to be explain'd, *Labor & opera omnis est in viribus comparandis*. Moreover, *usus* being a Verbal of *utor*, may well be supposed to govern an Ablative Case of the Verb: Yea, and as the Verb *utor* is sometimes found governing an Accusative Case, so is this Noun too; as, *Adam usu est hominem astutum, doctum, scitum & callidum*, Plaut.

(6) Of after a Verb or Participle may commonly be turn'd into *by* or *from*, and is a Note of an Ablative, which in Latin should be exprest by *a*, *ab*, *e*, *ex* or *de*, although those Prepositions are usually understood, as will be seen hereafter. Of after Verbs of accusing, &c. may be turn'd into *concerning*; and the word that signifies the thing that one is Accused of, should be made by an Ablative Case,

Cafe, with the Preposition *de* ; as, *Accusat de furto* : which Preposition is often left out ; and then it is, *Accusat furto*. And the reason why the Noun is used after any of these Verbs in the Genitive Case, is, because the former Substantive *crimine*, *culpâ*, or *scelere*, is understood. So it comes to be *Accusat furti*, i. e. *de crimine furti*. If the general word *crimen* or *scelus*, be the word that signifies the thing of which one is Accused, and be used in the Genitive Case, (as it always is, or in the Ablative without a Preposition) then *ratione*, *causâ* or *ergo* is understood, as *Accusatur sceleris*, i. e. *ratione sceleris*. The ~~Particle~~ *ergo* of after the Verbs *pœnitet*, *piget*, *particula* &c. is indeed a sign of a Genitive Case ; but that Genitive Case is not govern'd of the Verbs, but it is a Genitive Case of diversity, and the former Substantive is understood ; as, *Pœnitet me peccati*, i. e. *ratione peccati*.

Of after the Verb *Sum* is sometimes a sign of a Genitive Case ; but then the former Substantive is understood ; as, *Est boni nominis*, or *bonæ indolis*, sub. *Vir* or *Puer*. Sometimes it is not a sign of a Genitive Case, but may be turned into *in*, and be made by the Ablative Case ; as, *I am of another Mind*, *Sum in aliâ Sententiâ*.

(7) The Particle *of* is often the same with *by* and *from*, and may be turned into them ; and then it is a sign of the Ablative Case : as, *He is Lamented of all Men*, *Fletur ab omnibus* : *He received it of Peter*, *Accepit à Petro* : And generally after Verbs Passives, and Verbs of receiving and taking away. Vid. *supra*. (5)

Of sometimes is the same with *with* ; but then *with* is put for *by* or *from*, and is made by *à* or *ab* expressed or understood ; as, *Defessus sum ambulando*, or *ab ambulando*, *I am weary of walking*. When *of* may be turned into concerning, it is made by the Ablative Case with *de* or *super*, as *Memini de te* : *Multa super Priamo rogatus*. When *of* denotes the matter, and may be turn'd into out of, it is made by the Ablative Case with *ex* ; as, *He made a Cup of Gold*, *Eccit poculum ex auro*. *Of* is sometimes the same with *because of*, or *by reason of* ; and then the word is made by the Genitive Case, and the word *cause* or *reason* is understood in the Ablative. Upon this account it is, that the Verbs *pœnitet*, *pudet*, &c. are found with a Genitive Case after them : And so are *timeo* and *vereor*, *Timeo servorum suorum*. Mart. *He is afraid of his Servants* : *Neq; bujus fis veritus fœmina primaria*. Ter. *Be not afraid of this Gentlewoman*.

(8) *A Friend of mine*, seems to be an Abbreviation of *A Friend of my Friends*, *One of my Friends* ; put partitively,

(9) *Of*

(9) Of this, see more in the Doctrine of the *Gerunds*.

(10) *My Father's Garment*, is at length, *My Father his Garment*. When the latter of the two Substantives denotes the Possessor, it is more usually made by the Adjective Possessive, and more Elegantly by a Dative Case; as, *He gave it into my Father's hands*, *Dedit in manus Paternas*, or *Dedit Patri in manus*.

(11) That of that seems to belong to the signification of the *English* Verb, may be left out, and the Noun put Transitively after the Verb; as, *To accept Terms*, *to admit an Umpire*: Or else it may be reduced to *from* or *concerning*; as, *I will beware of him*, *Cavebo ab illo*: *I heard of him*, *Audiui de illo*: *He is glad of the Message*, *Gaudet de nuntio*. *Off* with a double *f* is no sign of a Genitive, but is a part of the signification of the Verb; as, *Stand off*, *put off*, *cut off*, &c. and is of the same Importance with *from*. The *Latin* expresses it by compounding their Verb with *ab* or *ex*; as, *Abscindo*, *excido*, *To Cut off*, *To Fall off*.

CHAP.

C H A P. XII.

Of the Dative Case.

THE Particles *to* or *for* put *acquisitively*, before a casual word, are signs of a *Dative* Case.

They are put *acquisitively*, when they denote the use, behoof, profit, or damage of any Person or Thing. (1)

And so a *Dative*, either of the Person, or of the Thing, is used either after *Nouns*, *Verbs*, or *Participles*, when any thing is signified to come to, or be taken from it; yea, many times, though the sign *to* be not express'd. (2.)

But if the sign *to* follow a Verb of *preparing*, *applying*, *exhorting*, *provoking*, *inclining*, *calling*, *appertaining*, *moving*, or the Verb *loquor*, the casual word is more commonly made by the *Accusative* Case, and govern'd of the Preposition *ad*: And sometimes after the Adjectives, *born*, *prone*, *propense*, *vehement*; as, *Born to Glory*, *Natus ad Gloriam*. (3.)

Also, if the *Acquisitive* Particle *for* come after the Adjectives, *profitable*, *unprofitable*, *fit*, *unfit*, *meet*, *unmeet*, the casual word is often used in the *Accusative* Case with the Preposition *ad*; as, *Profitable for War*, *Utilis ad Bellum*.

When *to* signifies the same with *in comparison of*, the casual word is made by the *Accusative* Case with *ad*, or the *Ablative* with *prae*; as, *I am a Fool to him*, *Stultus sum ad illum*, or *prae illo*.

When *to* comes before a word of *Time*, and signifies the same with *unto* or *until*, the casual word is made by the *Accusative* Case with *ad* or *in*; as, *It will last to the Tenth Year*, *Durabit in decimum Annum*.

Notes,

Notes on CHAP. XII.

(1) **T**HIS dation, or acquisition, or *finis cui*, is express'd by a Dative Case in Latin: So that hither belong *Quibus significatur aliquid dari vel adimi*. Oxf. Gram.

(2) Therefore all these sorts of Verbs following, do take after them this Case, viz. Verbs that betoken to *profit* or *disprofit*, to *counsel*, to *help*, to *command*, to *obey*, to *oppose*; and under these, to *abate* or *be angry at*, to *shew*, to *trust*, to *pardon*; to *mind* or *study*, (as *studere rei*, is *dare studium rei*), although they have not the sign so in English. Also, *parco*, *placoo*, *faveo*, *patrocinor*, *medeor*, *blandior*, *doleo*, *suadeo*, *libet*, *licet*; and many Verbs compounded with *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, cause the Noun mostly to be put in the Dative Case, though they have not the sign so. But here is well to be noted, That there are some Verbs, which sometimes take after them an Accusative Case, and sometimes a Dative. Some of these admit both these Cases after the Latin manner; others admit one of these Cases after the Latin manner; and the other after the Greek manner. The reason why the same Verb, or a Verb of the same Signification, admits sometimes a Dative, sometimes an Accusative, (and yet in the same Sense) is, Because the nature of Verbs is such, that all Giving and Acquisition is express'd by the Dative Case: But every Transient Action (as the Action of accusing another) is express'd by the Accusative Case: e. g. To *beat*, and to *deceive*, are Transient Actions; therefore *verbero* and *fallo* do rightly govern an Accusative Case, not a Dative: And yet in both words there is a Dation or Acquisition; and therefore we say, *dare verbera*, and *dare verba*: Which Dation is express'd by a Dative Case; as, *Dare verbera ponto*, Ovid. *Cui verba dare difficile est*, Ter. And thus it is with the same Verb, differently considered. *Præstolor* taken intransitively for to *abide*, or *stay*, takes a Dative Case after it; as, *Qui præstolaretur tibi ad forum*, Cic. i. e. *Qui præsto essent tibi*; i. e. *Tui causa*, or *Tui commodo*: But taken transitively for to *tarry for*, or to *expect*, it takes an Accusative Case after it; so we say, *Præstolari aliquem*, as well as *expectare*, or, *manere aliquem*. Like to which is *invideo*, which admits an Accusative Case transitive, but a Dative acquisitive; as, *Invideo hanc rem tibi*; yea, *invideo* sometimes governs an Accusative

culative Case of the Person ; as, *Treadas invideo*, Ovid. If I say, *Invideo tibi*, I denote the Dation of a Mischief to the Person envied ; If I say, *Invideo te*, I note the Transition of a Mischief from the Person envying to another. *Invidia verbum ductum est a nimis intiendo fortunam alterius, & hac causa est cur Accusatio jungat Atius*, Cic. Thus *præsto* upon the account of its own Native Signification ; for *priori loco stare* (as *præire*, *priori loco ire*) takes a Dative Case after it, by way of Acquisition : Upon this Consideration it is said, *Homo homini præstat*. But because *standing*, or *going first*, denotes *Dignity* as well as *Place* ; therefore *præsto* comes to signify also to *excel* ; *vincere*, *superare* : And from this Consideration it is, that it governs an Accusative Case, as other Verbs of excelling do ; as, *Præstat ingenio alius alium*. The like may be said of *antesto*, *anteo*, *antecedo*, *antevertō*, *præo* : Of this Nature seem to be *indulgeo*, *moderor*, *medicor*, *palpor*, *deficiō*, *obireto*, *occumbo*, *curo*, *adulor*, *assensio*, *assensor*, *inversio*, *adversor*, *condono*, *inbio*, *impendeo*, *insto*, *occursō* ; Examples of all which, taking after them an Accusative Case, and otherwhile a Dative, are found in Classical Authors, *vid. Danes. and Oxf. Gram.* Others are joyn'd sometimes to a Dative, sometimes to an Accusative, according to their different Signification. *Tempero* us'd for *modum impono*, or *abstineo*, takes a Dative ; as, *Lingua temperare, sociis temperare* : But being us'd for *cobibere intra ordinem, modum, mensuram*, it takes an Accusative ; as, *Temperas mundum*, Ovid : So *Temperare iras, lachrymas*, &c. *Studeo* takes a Dative, when it signifies *favere*, or *operam dare* ; as, *Studuit Cataline, studet optimis artibus*, (though we read, *In id solum student*, Fab. *In eâ re studebat*, Gell.) but an Accusative, when it signifies *volo* or *cupio*, *ut omnes mulieres eadem aquæ studeant, nolintq; omnia*, Ter. except there be an Ellipsis of the Verb *facere*. There are also many Verbs, that one while take a Dative Case, after the Latin manner ; another while an Accusative, after the Greek Custom ; as, *Suadeo, benedico, maledico, lateo* ; *mibi latero valeat*, Cic. Others take one while a Dative *more Græco*, another while an Accusative *more Romano* ; and that Accusative either without a Preposition, or with one. Thus Verbs of *following*, and *accompanying* ; as, *Ita diis placitum*, *voluptati ut moror comes sequatur*, Plau. *Cetera quæ comitantur huic vitæ*, Cic. Also, Verbs of *Praying* ; as, *Pergin' precari pessimo* ? Plau. *Cui ne voluit fortuna precari*, Virg. *Precatorem adeam qui mihi sic oret*, Ter. Which, after the Roman manner, would be, *Precari pessimum, quem precari, orare me*. So *deceat* according to the Latin, takes an Accusative ; as, *Forma viros neg-*
lecta

illa decet : but according to the Greek, a Dative ; as, *Nostri gaudi meri non decet*; Plaut. *Ut vobis decet*, Ter. in imitation of *οἱ πρῶτοι*. Or an Accusative with a Preposition ; as, *Incidere portis*, after the Greeks ; *Incidere in portas*, after the Romans. Yea, *oportet*, though it be intransitive, according to the Latins ; yet sometimes takes a Dative after it, in imitation of the Greeks ; as, *Homini servo suos domitos habere oportet oculos*, Plaut. Some will have *jubeo* intransitive *more Romano*, at least as to the Person ; yet it takes a Dative after it *more Græco* ; as, *Fussit custodibus*, Macrob. *Hispanis Gallicisq; jubet*. Claud.

(3) Although these Verbs do most usually and elegantly take after them an Accusative with *ad* ; yet sometimes they take after them a Dative ; as, *It clamor Cælo*, Virg.

And indeed, most Verbs instead of a Dative, sometimes take an Accusative with a Preposition : *Ego te ad pistorem dabo*, Pl. *Non vaco ad istas ineptias*, Sen. *Dominatur in suis*, Cic. *Quæ ad patriam vis nunciari*, Pl. *Quam me ad illum promittere*, Pl. Especially Verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *in*, *ob* ; such as, *accedo*, *accommodo*, *addo*, *adhaereo*, *adbibeo*, *adjicio*, *adjungo*, *admoveo*, *affero*, *appello*, *appono*, *appropinquo*, *ascribo*, *attendo*, *illabor*, *illudo*, *immineo*, *impono*, *inceſſo*, *includeo*, *incumbo*, *insiga*, *injicio*, *insideo*, *insilio*, *insulto*, *invado*, *objicio*, *conduco*, *confero*, *subeo* : Examples of these, see in *Danef. Paralipom.*

C H A P. XIII.

Of the *Ablative Case*.

THe *Ablative Case* is chiefly known by the Prepositions, *in, with, from, by, out of*; and sometimes by *for, of, at, on, through, and than*. (1) It is also govern'd of any of the other Prepositions, which serve to the *Ablative Case*. It is always govern'd of some Preposition: But many of those Prepositions are commonly understood; some of them are seldom or never express'd. (2)

Yet even the Prepositions, *with, from, by*, are sometimes signs of a Dative Case, in imitation of the *Greeks*. (3)

When *for* signifies the same with *instead of*, or *in behalf of*, or *according to*, or *on ones side*, or comes before any word of *Price* or *Wager*, or the words *Part, Profit*, or *Honour*, it is a sign of an *Ablative Case*.

If *of* be the same in signification with *by, from, or concerning*, it is a sign of an *Ablative Case*.

At before a word of *Time, Price, Manner, Instrument, Cause, Games*, is commonly a sign of the *Ablative Case*.

When *on* signifies the same with *above*, or comes before words of *Time, Musical Instruments*, or any words denoting *Food, Conditions, or Terms*; or comes after Verbs of *depending*, it is a sign of an *Ablative Case*.

When *through* is apply'd to *Occasion, Cause, or Means*, it is a sign of an *Ablative Case*.

Than after a Comparative Degree, before a casual word, is a sign of an *Ablative Case*.

Many of these Prepositions are sometimes no sign of any Case; but belong to the Signification of the Verb, to which they are joyn'd. (4)

Notes

Notes on CHAP. XIII.

(1) **Y**ET these Prepositions are not always signs of an Ablative Case: For *with* before a Person, with reference to a Place where one is, or to some Power with him, is sometimes made by an Accusative Case with *apud*; as, *Egit causam apud iudices*, He pleaded his cause with the Judges; *Cenabis apud me*, Thou shalt sup with me.

By signifying *through*, or *by means of*, is made by an Accusative Case with *per*; as, *Per Gratiam Dei*, By the Grace of God. So also when it is used in *swearing* or *protesting*. When it signifies *nigh*, or *near to*, it is made by an Accusative Case with *prope*, *juxta*, *propter*, *ad*. When it signifies *by reason of*, it is sometimes made by an Accusative Case with *per*, *ob*, *propter*, and sometimes by the Ablative Case with *pro*; *By my self*, *Solus*, or, *Per me*.

For in the beginning of a Sentence, is made by a Conjunction, *nam*, *enim*, &c. For before a Person (for the use of) is made by the Dative Case, Acquisitive. For signifying *by reason of*, or *for the sake of*, is sometimes made by the Accusative Case with *propter*, *ob*, or *erga*; sometimes by the Ablative Case with *pro*. For before *purpose*, *end*, *use*, is made by the Accusative Case with *ad* or *in*. Concerning the Particle *of*, see Chap. 11.

At is commonly a sign of the Ablative Case, when it comes before a word of *Time*, *Price*, *Manner*, *Instrument*, *Cause*, or *Games*. *At* before the proper Names of *Cities* or *Towns* of the First or Second Declension, and Singular Number, and before the word *Home*, is a sign of the Genitive Case; as, *He lived at London*, *Vixit Londini*; *He studies at home*, *Studet domi*. But before a proper Name of the Third Declension, or Plural Number only, it is a sign of an Ablative Case; as, *He warred at Carthage*, *Militavit Carthagine*; *He studied at Athens*, *Studuit Athenis*. But of this, more in the Doctrine of *Ellipsis*.

On after Verbs of *bestowing*, *spending*, *employing*, *wasting*, *losing*, is a sign of an Accusative Case with *in*.

Through is a sign of an Ablative Case, when it is applied to *Occasion*, *Cause*, or *Means*, with *ex*: But apply'd to *Place*, it is a sign of an Accusative Case with *per*.

Than after a Comparative Degree, before a casual Word, is a sign of an Ablative Case; but before any other word, it is made by *quam*.

(2) What Prepositions are understood, and when, will appear in the Doctrine of the Prepositions,

(3) Verbs

(3) Verbs of *striving*, and *contending*, according to the *Latin* Custom, take after them an *Ablative Case* with *cum* : Yet in imitation of the *Greeks*, the *Latin* Poets usually joyn a *Dative* to them ; as, *Primo contendis Homero*, Propert. *Magno bellare parenti*, Stat. So also *coco* and *misceo* ; *Sed non ut placidis coeant immitia*, Hor. *Mista Deo mulier*, Virg. Verbs of *distance*, *differing*, and *disagreeing*, more *Latino*, take after them an *Ablative* with *a*, or *ab* ; yet in imitation of the *Greeks*, the *Latins* (especially the Poets) commonly joyn a *Dative* to them ; as, *Paulum sepultæ distat inertia celata virtus*. *Dissidens plebi numero beatorum eximit virtus*, Hor. So also Verbs of *driving away*, or *defending from* ; as, *Solstitium pecori defendite*, Virg. *Nilne pudet capiti non posse pericula cauo Pellere* ? Perf. To these may be added Verbs of *taking away* ; as, *Adimitur mihi hac potestas* ; unless we choose to refer this to *Acquisition*, vid. Chap. 12. Verbs *Passives*, according to the *Latins*, take after them an *Ablative Case* with *a*, or *ab*, signifying *by* ; which Prepositions are mostly, if not always exprest : And sometimes an *Accusative Case* with *per* ; as, *Nisi ab improbis expulsus essem & per bonos resitutus*, Cic. But instead of this *Ablative* with *a*, or *ab*, or this *Accusative* with *per*, after Verbs *Passives*, (especially after their Participles) the *Latins* familiarly use a *Dative*, in imitation of the *Greeks* ; as, *Honestæ bonis viris, non occulta, peruntur*. *Magno studio mihi elaboratum est a puero*, Cic. But here we must distinguish between *Datives* joyn'd to Verbs *Passives* : Some are after the *Latin* manner, some after the *Greek* : When in the *Active* also, that *Dative* in the same Signification is made by a *Dative*, it is a *Latin Structure* ; as, *Oratio mea probatur omnibus*, is *Latin* ; because we say, *Probo orationem meam omnibus* : But the Syntax is then *Greekish*, when in the *Active* a *Nominative* is put for the *Dative* ; as, *Oratio mea vilipenditur omnibus*, *My Discourse is slighted by all Men*, for *Omnēs vilipendunt orationem meam* ; *Deus colitur hominibus*, for *Homines colunt Deum*. Yet it may often happen, that a *Dative Case*, after a Verb *Passive*, may be both in a *Latin* and a *Greek Structure* : as, *Virgilius legitur tibi*, *Virgil is read to thee*, is *Latin* ; for we say, *Lego Virgilium tibi*, *I read Virgil to thee* : But, *Virgilius legitur tibi*, *Virgil is read by thee*, is *Greekish* ; the same with, *Tu legis Virgilium*, *Thou readest Virgil* ; ἀναγιγνώσκεις τον. Vid. Oxf. Gram.

(4) As to *think on*, to *bear with*, to *laugh at*, to *pass by*, &c. Vid. De his Particulis Walker.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the First Declension.

D *Eclension* is the way or manner of varying a casual Word into its several Cases.

There are Five *Declensions* of Nouns.

We may know what *Declension* a Noun is of, by the ending of the Genitive Case Singular. (1)

The Nominative and Vocative Plural, are always alike; and so are the Dative and Ablative Plural.

The Vocative Singular in *Latin* Nouns, is evermore the same with the Nominative; except in Words of the Second *Declension*, that end in *us*. (2)

The First *Declension* is, when the Genitive Case Singular ends in *a*, the Dative in *e*, the Accusative in *am*, the Ablative in *a*; the Nominative and Vocative Plural in *a*, the Genitive in *arum*, the Dative in *is*, the Accusative in *as*, the Ablative in *is*. (3)

As for Example :

Singular,	{	Nom. <i>Musa</i> , a Song.	{	Nom. <i>Musa</i> , Songs.
		Voc. <i>Musa</i> , ô Song.		Voc. <i>Musa</i> , ô Songs.
		Gen. <i>Musæ</i> , of a Song.		Gen. <i>Musarum</i> , of Songs.
		Dat. <i>Musæ</i> , to a Song.		Dat. <i>Musis</i> , to Songs.
		Acc. <i>Musam</i> , the Song.		Acc. <i>Musas</i> , the Songs.
		Abl. <i>Musâ</i> , from a Song.		Abl. <i>Musis</i> , from Songs.

Most Words of this *Declension* end in *a*, in the Nominative Case : Some few *Greekish* Words end in *as*, and some in *es*; as *Aneas*, *Anchises*. (4)

Some Words of this *Declension*, do rather make their Dative and Ablative Plural in *abus*. (5)

Notes

Notes on CHAP. XIV.

(1) **T**He Nominative, and the Vocative, (according to some good Grammarians) are call'd *Casus recti*, or *Straight Cases*: All the rest are call'd *Casus obliqui*, or *Crooked Cases*.

(2) But *Greekish* Nouns of the First Declension that end in *as* of *es*, and of the Second Declension that end in *eus*, and of the Third Declension that end in *as*, *is*, or *ys*, cast away *s* in the Vocative, after the manner of the *Greeks*.

(3) The Genitive Case Singular of old ended in *as*, so *Ennius* says; *Dux ipse vias*; and to this day we say *Paterfamiliâs*, (though *Livy* also says, *Paterfamiliâ*) in imitation of the *Greek* Nouns, that end in *a* pure. The Genitive Case Singular also of old ended in *ai*, which the Poets sometimes dissolve into *ai*; as, *aulai, aquai*; yea, in Masculines; as, *Geryonai, Voff*.

The Genitive Case Plural in all Declensions, except the Fifth, is capable of Contraction; but seldom in words of the Neuter Gender. In the First Declension, *Patronymicks*, and the Compounds of *gignô*, and *colo* especially; as, *Dardanidum, Terrigenum, Cælicolum*, for *orum*. But here we must carefully distinguish between *Dardanidum*, the Genitive Plural of the Third Declension of *Dardanis*, and *Dardanidum* of the First of *Dardanides*. In the Second Declension, most commonly in Distributives, and other Adjectives; as, *septenium, magnanimum*, for *orum*: yet they also say, *nummum, sestertium, divum*, for *orum*. In the Third, usually in Nouns that end in *us*; as, *animantum, sapientium*, for *ium*. They also say, *optimatum*; yea, the Poets say, *veprum, claudum, caestum, agrestum*, &c. In the Fourth, the Poets use *nurum, passum, currum*, for *uum*.

(4) Those that end in *as*, make their Accusative in *am* or *am*, and the Vocative in *a*. Those that end in *es*, make their Accusative in *en*, their Vocative and Ablative in *e*. If we meet with *Anchisam* and *Anchisâ*, it is from the *Latin* Nominative *Anchisa*. Yet some in *es*, make the Vocative in *a*, after the *Greeks*; as *Oresta, Zelota*. *Hebrew* Words sometimes take a *Greek* Termination, and belong to this Declension; such as *Abraham, Adas, Satanas*, Genitive *a*. Those that end in *e*, are of a *Greek* Declining; as *Epitome*, --mes, --me; --men, --me.

(5) Such as *Filia, nata, Dea, mula, equa, liberta, anima, asina, Domina, famula, serva, socia*, for distinction of the Sex: Yet sometimes they are found ending in *is*.

C H A P. XV.

Of the Second Declension.

THE Second *Declension* is, when the Genitive Case Singular endeth in *i*, (1) the Dative in *o*, the Accusative in *um*, the Ablative in *o*: The Nominative and Vocative Plural in *i*, (2) the Genitive in *orum*, (3) the Dative in *is*, the Accusative in *os*, the Ablative in *is*. As for Example.

Singulariter,	Nom. <i>Liber</i> , a Book.	Pluraliter,	Nom. <i>Libri</i> , Books.
	Voc. <i>Liber</i> , ô Book.		Voc. <i>Libri</i> , ô Books.
	Gen. <i>Libri</i> , of a Book.		Gen. <i>Librorum</i> , of Books.
	Dat. <i>Libro</i> , to a Book.		Dat. <i>Libris</i> , to Books.
	Acc. <i>Librum</i> , the Book.		Acc. <i>Libros</i> , the Books.
	Abl. <i>Libro</i> , from a Book.		Abl. <i>Libris</i> , from Books.

The *Latin* Nouns of this Declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, or *um*; The *Greekish* Nouns end in *ens*, *os*, or *on*. (4)

The *Greekish* Nouns, that end in *ens* and *os*, often vary from this Rule, and follow the *Greek* way of declining.

All *Latin* Nouns of this Declension, that end in *us*, (if they be not of the Neuter Gender) make the Vocative in *e*; as, *Dominus*, Voc. *Domine*; except *Dens*, that makes Voc. *Dens*; and *Filius*, that makes *Fili*; *Genius*, *Geni*; *Meus*, *Mi*. And Proper Names of Men, Months, and Heathenish Gods, that end in *ius*, in the Nominative Case, make the Vocative in *i*; as, *Antonius*, *Antoni*; *Januarius*, *Januari*; *Mercurius*, *Mercuri*. (5)

Note well, That Nouns of the Neuter Gender, have always Three Cases alike; to wit, the Nominative, the Vocative, and the Accusative; which Three Cases

ses in the Plural Number, always end in *a*, of what Declension soever they be ; except *ambo* and *duo*. (6)

As for Example ; *Regnum* is thus declin'd :

Singul.	{	Nom. Voc. Accu. <i>regnum</i> .	}	Plural.	{	Nom. Voc. Accu. <i>regna</i> .
		Gen. <i>regni</i> .				Gen. <i>regnorum</i> .
		Dat. Abl. <i>regno</i> .				Dat. Abl. <i>regnis</i> .

Ambo and *duo* have a peculiar way of declining ; thus :

Plural.	{	Nom. } <i>duo, dua, duo.</i>	}	{	{	Dat. <i>duobus, duabus, duobus.</i>
		Voc. }				Accu. <i>duos, (7) duas, duo.</i>
		Gen. <i>duorum, duarum, duorum.</i>				Abl. <i>duobus, duabus, duobus.</i>

In like manner, *ambo*.

Notes on CHAP. XV.

(1) **N**ouns ending in *ius*, and *ium*, use to contract the Genitive Case ; as, *Peculi, res mancipi*, for *mancipii*.

(2) Old Nominative Plurals ended in *ei* ; as, *Captivi*, Plaur.

(3) Of this, see in the First Declension.

4. Those that end in *ir*, and *ur*, seem to suffer an Apocope, and to be made of Old Nouns in *us* ; as, *vir* of *virus*, and *satur* of *saturus* : For we read *vira*, and *satura*. *Querquetulane viræ* ; *Nymphæ æmæ* quædæ ; Scal. Hence remain *virgo* and *virago*. Yea, some of those that end in *er*, seem to come of Old Nominative Cases in *us* ; as, *puer* from *puerus* : for we read *puere* in Plaur.

(5) But Greek Proper Names in *ius*, often make their Vocative in *e* ; as, *Cynthius, Delius, Tyrinthus, Laertius* ; which *Vossius* thinks, is, because they are Epithetes, rather than Proper Names : Yet we read also *Sperchic*, Rhén. If we meet with *fluvius*, or *populus*, &c. seeming to be of the Vocative Case, it is nothing but an imitation of the Attick Dialect amongst the Greeks, which used the Nominative and Vocative promiscuously.

(6) Yet *dua* is also read, *Video Sepulchra dua*, Cic.

(7) Yet we read also *ambo*, and *duo*, in the Accusative Masculine ; as, *Puer ambo anguis enecat*, Plaur. *Si duo praterea tales Idea tulisset Terra viros*, Virg. Yea, we read *ambo*, in the Feminine Gender ; *Si ambo in uno essent loco*, Sc. *Caprae*, Plaur. All this in imitation of the Greek *ἀμφο* and *δύο*.

C H A P. XVI. Of the Third Declension.

THE Third Declension is, when the Genitive Case Singular endeth in *is*, the Dative in *i*, the Accusative commonly in *em*, sometimes in *im*, (1) seldom in both, (2) the Ablative commonly in *e*, sometimes in *i*, (3) often in both. (4) The Nominative and Vocative Plural in *es*, (5) the Genitive commonly in *um*, and often in *ium*, (6) the Dative in *bus*, (7) the Accusative in *es*, the Ablative in *bus*.

Singulariter,	{	Nom. <i>Lapis</i> , a Stone.	}	Pluraliter,	{	Nom. <i>Lapides</i> , Stones.
		Voc. <i>Lapis</i> , δ Stone.				Voc. <i>Lapides</i> , δ Stones.
		Gen. <i>Lapidis</i> , of a Stone.				Gen. <i>Lapidum</i> , of Stones.
		Dat. <i>Lapidi</i> , to a Stone.				Dat. <i>Lapidibus</i> , to Stones.
		Acc. <i>Lapidem</i> , the Stone.				Acc. <i>Lapides</i> , the Stones.
		Abl. <i>Lapide</i> , from a Stone.				Abl. <i>Lapidibus</i> , from Stones.

An Example of the Neuter is, *Corpus* a Body.

Singulariter,	{	Nom. <i>Corpus</i> , a Body.	}	Pluraliter,	{	Nom. <i>Corpora</i> , Bodies.
		Voc. <i>Corpus</i> , δ Body.				Voc. <i>Corpora</i> , δ Bodies.
		Gen. <i>Corporis</i> , of a Body.				Gen. <i>Corporum</i> , of Bodies.
		Dat. <i>Corpori</i> , to a Body.				Dat. <i>Corporibus</i> , to Bodies.
		Acc. <i>Corpus</i> , the Body.				Acc. <i>Corpora</i> , the Bodies.
		Abl. <i>Corpore</i> , from a Body.				Abl. <i>Corporibus</i> , from Bodies.

This Declension comprehends all Terminations in the Nominative Case Singular, except *u* and *um*.

The Genitive Case Singular, is of equal Syllables with the Nominative, or exceeding it by one Syllable. (8)

Of old they oftentimes turn'd *i* into *e*, and *e* into *i*, in the Dative and Ablative Case Singular of this Declension. (9)

Many *Greekish* Nouns, reduc'd by the *Latins* to this Declension, do vary from the Rule, and follow the *Greek* way of Declining, at least in some Cases.

Notes

Notes on CHAP. XVI.

(1) **T**Hose that make the Accusative in *im* only, are, *amissim, burim, cannabim, charybdim, cucumim, leucaspim, magydarim, memphitim, opim, pelvim, prasepim, ravim, securim, sinapim, sitim, syrtim, tussim* and *vim*: And the Names of Rivers ending in *is* in the Nominative, whether Greek or Latin; as, *Albim, Ararim, Ligarim, Tibrim, Tiberim, Tigrim, Tanaim, &c.*

(2) Those that make the Accusative both in *em* and *im*; are, *aqualis, clavis, febris, navis, puppis, restis, sementis, strigilis* and *turris*: of which the four first most commonly make *em*; but, *puppis, restis, turris*, most commonly *im*.

(3) Those that make the Ablative in *i*, only are, all those that make the Accusative in *im* only. Also Nouns that end in *al, ar* or *e* in the Nominative, except *far, hepar, jubar, nectar, sal*, and *par*, for a Companion. Also Substantives Appellatives, that resemble Adjectives, usually make their Ablative in *i*; such as, *Adilis, affinis, annalis, bipennis, canalis, familiaris, natalis, popularis, rivalis, sodalis, strigilis, triremis, &c.* Yet of old, Nouns ending in *e*, are found making *e* in the Ablative; as, *Exiguum pleno de mare demat aque*, Ovid. Yea, the Adjectives also, whose Neuter ends in *e*; as, *Specie cœleste resumptâ*, Ovid. And the Substantives that resemble them; as, *Erepto natale foret*, Lucan. *Rudis* and *volucris*, when they are Substantives, make *e* only, otherwise *i*.

(4) Those that make the Ablative both in *e* and *i*, are, All those that make the Accusative both in *em* and *im*. (To which may be added, *amnis, avis, civis, classis, collis, finis, fursur, fustis, ignis, imber, labes, lux, occiput, orbis, ovis, pars, postis, fors, supellex, vestis, unguis*; which commonly end in *e*, yet sometimes are found in *i*.) Also all Adjectives of one Termination in the Nominative, make both *e* and *i* in the Ablative; except, *hospes, pauper, senex, sospes*, and the Compounds of *pes* (except *quadrupes*) which make *e* only. *Memor* indeed makes only *memori*; but then the old Nominative Case is suppos'd to be *memoris*; *Itane est immemoris?* Cœcilius apud Priscian. When a Participle of the present Tense, agreeth with an Ablative Case absolute (which they call *Ablativus consequentia*) it always makes *e* in the Ablative Case; as, *Imperante Augusto, not imperantis*. And indeed the Participles of the Present Tense, and Adjectives ending in *is*, do seldom make the Ablative in *i*.

Also all Adjectives of the Comparative Degree, make both *e* and *i*. The reason of this seems to be, because anciently they were but of one Termination ; as, *Hoc senatusconsultum prior factum est*, Vid. Prisc. lib. 7.

(5) The Nominative, Vocative and Accusative Plural of this Declension, end in *es* ; but of old also in *eis* and *is*, especially of such words as make *ium* in the Genitive Plural. This frequently occurs in *Plautus*, and elsewhere. But the Neuters of this, as of all other Declensions end in *a*. Those Neuters of this Declension, that make the Ablative Singular in *e* only ; make the Nominative Plural in *a* impure ; as, *Corpus*, *corpora* : But those that make the Ablative in *i* only, or both in *e* and *i*, make the Nominative Plural in *ia* ; as, *Maria*, *mollia* ; except *memora*, *ubera*, *vetera* ; and words of the Comparative degree ; as, *meliora*, *tristiora*. *Plura*, and *pluvia*, are both found in good Authors ; and so are *aplustra*, and *aplustria* ; the former suppos'd to be from *aplustrum*, the latter from *aplustre*.

(6) The Genitive Case Plural ends in *um* : as, *Lapidum* : But there are also many that end in *ium*. 1. Those Nouns whose Ablative Singular ends either in *i*, or both in *e* and *i* ; as, *Puppium*, *utilium*, *nostratium* ; Except Comparative Degrees, which make the Genitive in *um* impure ; as, *Majorum*, (only *plus* makes *plurium*.) And these Adjectives, *bicorporum*, *tricorporum*, *celerum*, *congenerum*, *degenerum*, *divitum*, *inopum*, *memorum*, *participum*, *quadrupedum*, *supplicum*, *uberum*, *veterum* ; and the Compounds of *facio* ; as, *artificum*, *opificum*, &c. and two Substantives, *mugilum* and *strigilum*. 2. Those Nouns, whose Nominative Singular ends in *ns* or *rs* ; as, *infantium*, *cohortium*, from *infans*, *cohors*. 3. Those Nouns, that have equal Syllables in the Nominative and Genitive Case Singular : as, *nubium*, *mensium*, *venurium*, *carnium*, (from the old Nominative Case *carnis*) except *canis*, *juvenis*, *senex*, *vates*, which make *um*. *Samnitium* (and *Quiritium* are from the old Nominative Cases, *Samnitis*, *Quiritis*. 4. Monosyllables make the Genitive Plural in *ium* ; as, *montium*, *fontium*, &c. except *crus*, *grus*, *sus*, *laus*, *fraus*, *mos*, *flos*, *fur*, *ren*, *splen*, *pes*, *pras*, *fax*, *rex*, *grex*, *lex*, *dux*, *frux*, *strix* and *vox* ; and some Greek Monosyllables ; as, *gryps*, *lynx*, *sphinx*, *thrax*, that make *um*. 5. Words that want the Singular Number make the Genitive Plural in *ium* ; as, *mænia*, *penates*, &c. except, *cælitæ*, *lemures*, *lucres*, *opes*, *primores*, *proceres*. 6. Nouns ending in *as* did anciently make their Genitive Plural in *ium* ; so we read in *Livy* and *Fustin*, *utilitarianum*, *civitanium*, *calamitanium*, *affinitatium* ; but now adays they are used

used in *um*. Those Nouns that end in *ium*, often suffer a Syncope; so we read, *formacium*, *apum*, *cohortum*, *Quiritium*, *optimatum*, *locupletium*, *volucrum*; especially Nouns ending in *nium*; as, *adolescensium*, *parentium*, *potentium*, *sequentium*, *serpentium*, &c. *Boum* is anomalous, so are *bobus* and *bubus*; and of *fus*, *subus* and *suibus*. The Names of the Feasts of Heathenish Gods, wanting the Singular Number, make the Genitive Plural in *ium*, and sometimes in *orum*; as, *Bacchanalia*, *Bacchanalium* and *Bacchanaliorum*: So also we read *vasorum*, *vestigaliorum*, *anciliorum*, *exemplariorum*; which Genitive Cases are supposed to remain in use, from the old Nominative Cases in *um* of the Second Declension, *vasum*, *vestigalium*, &c.

(7) Many Neuters of this Declension ending in *ma*, make the Dative and Ablative Plural in *is*, as well as *bus*; as, *problematis*, *poematis*, from the old Nominative Cases of the Second Declension, *problematum*, *poematum*. As the *Æolicks* were wont to add *τα* to such Nominative Cases that ended in *a*; as, *περὶ λήματος* for *περὶ λήμα*. *Vasis* is from the old Nominative Case *vasum*.

(8) The Genitive Cases, *itineris*, *jecinoris*, *supellestilis*, *præcipitis*, *ancipitis*, are from *itiner*, *jecinus*, *supellestilis*, *præcipes*, *ancipes*, Vid. *Danef*.

(9) The reason of this seems to be the likeness of sound between these two Vowels. Sometimes *i* into *e*; as, *Hæret pede pes*, *densusque viro vir*, Virg. *Noctæ dea noctis cristatus caditur ales*, Ovid. *Si placet insultet Lygdame morte mea*, Proper. Sometimes *e* into *i*; as, *Mane cum luci simul*, Plaut. *Ut aquæ parti prodeant ad tris viros*, Id. In such kind of expressions, they neither had respect to the Nature of the Word, nor Custom, but only follow'd the Ear, *Rhen*.

C H A P. XVII.

Of the Fourth Declension,

THE Fourth Declension is, when the Genitive Case Singular endeth in *ûs*, (1) the Dative in *ui*, (2) the Accusative in *um*, the Ablative in *u*: The Nominative and Vocative Plural in *us*, the Genitive in *uum*, the Dative in *ibus*, the Accusative in *us*, the Ablative in *ibus*.

As for Example :

Singulariter,	{	Nom. <i>Manus</i> , an Hand.	}	Pluraliter,	{	Nom. <i>Manus</i> , Hands.
		Voc. <i>Manus</i> , ô Hand.				Voc. <i>Manus</i> , ô Hands.
		Gen. <i>Manûs</i> , of an Hand.				Gen. <i>Manuum</i> , of Hands.
		Dat. <i>Manui</i> , to an Hand.				Dat. <i>Manibus</i> , to Hands.
		Acc. <i>Manum</i> , the Hand.				Acc. <i>Manus</i> , the Hands.
		Abl. <i>Manu</i> , from an Hand.				Abl. <i>Manibus</i> , from Hands.

The Nouns of this Declension all end either in *us*, or in *u*. Those that end in *u*, are all of the Neuter Gender, and are not declin'd in the Singular Number. (3)

In the Plural Number they are declin'd thus:

Plural.	{	Nom. }	}	{	{	Dat. <i>genibus</i>
		Voc. }				Acc. <i>genua</i> .
		Gen. <i>genuum</i> .				Abl. <i>genibus</i> ,

Some few Nouns of this Declension, make the Dative and Ablative Plural in *ibus*. (4)

Notes

Notes on CHAP. XVII.

(1) **T**His Genitive Case of old ended in *uis* ; as, *Ejus anuis causâ*, Ter. *Ejus salviâ esse fructuis venenum*, Var.

(2) This Dative of old ended in *û* ; as, *Neq; concubitû indulgent*, Virg. *Vestitû nimio indulget*, Ter. Neither is it for Verse-fake, as some have thought : for Orators and Historians express it thus ; *Non se luxû atq; inertiæ corrumpendum dedit*, Salust. *Cruciatû aut præmio cuncta pervia esse*, Tac. Yea, *Cæsar* always uses it thus ; and in his Books *De Analogiâ*, affirms, that this Dative Case ought always to be thus express'd, *Gell. L. 4. cap. 16.*

(3) We read *cornûs* in the Genitive Case ; *Cinere cervini cornûs*, Plin. But that comes from the Nominative *cornus*, (the same with *cornu*) as, *tonitrûs* from *tonitrus*, Mart. For many Nouns of this Declension, had antiently both Terminations in the Nominative Case ; as, *cornus* and *cornu*, *gelus* and *gelu*, *genus* and *genu*. Some now end in *us* only, which formerly ended in *u* ; as, *artus* : For *Plautus* uses *artua* from *artu*, Oxf. Gram.

(4) These are, *acus*, *arcus*, *artus*, *lacus*, *partus*, *portus*, *specus*, *tribus*. We read also, *Quæstibus vanis agis iras*, Sen. *Pars verubus stridet*, Ovid. *Supplex jacet allapsa genubus*, Sen. Some add *quercubus* and *ficubus*, but without good Authority, Oxf. Gram. *Portibus* is also read as well as *portubus*. *Iesus* is anomalous ; which makes *Iesum*, in the Accusative Case ; in all the rest, *Iesu*.

C H A P. XVIII.

Of the Fifth Declension.

THe Fifth is, when the Genitive and Dative Case Singular endeth in *ei*, (1) the Accusative in *em*, the Ablative in *e*: The Nominative and Vocative Plural in *es*, the Genitive in *erum*, the Dative in *ebus*, the Accusative in *es*, the Ablative in *ebus*. As :

Singulariter,	{	Nom. <i>Dies</i> , a Day.	}	Pluraliter,	{	Nom. <i>Dies</i> , Days.
		Voc. <i>Dies</i> , ô Day.				Voc. <i>Dies</i> , ô Days.
		Gen. <i>Diei</i> , of a Day.				Gen. <i>Dierum</i> , of Days.
		Dat. <i>Diei</i> , to a Day.				Dat. <i>Diebus</i> , to Days.
		Acc. <i>Diem</i> , the Day.				Acc. <i>Dies</i> , the Days.
		Abl. <i>Die</i> , from a Day.				Abl. <i>Diebus</i> , from Days.

The Nominative Case of Words of this Declension, always ends in *es*: And all Nouns of it are of the Feminine Gender; except *dies*, and *meridies*.

All Nouns of this Declension want the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative Plural; except *res*, *species*, *facies*, *superficies*, *acies*, *dies*, and *meridies*. (2)

Notes on CHAP. XVIII.

(1) **T**He Genitive antiently ended in *ii*, and sometimes in *e*; as, *Quorum nihil pernicii causâ*, Cic. *Vix decimâ parte die reliquâ*, Sal. *Prima fide vocisq; rata tentamina sumpsit*, Ovid. *Usq; fide pignus dextrâs utraq; poposcit*, Id. Some say, That the Genitive Case Singular is sometimes found ending in *es*, *Gel. L. 9. c. 14.* as, *Rabies unde illa hæc germina surgunt*, Lucret. *Equites vero duros illius dies pœnas*, Cic. *Libra dies somniq; pares ubi fecerat horas*, Virg. The Dative of this Declension antiently ended in *e*; as, *Prodiderat commissâ fide sponsumq; negavit*, Hor.

(2) *Spebus* is found in *Victor*, *Rhen*: but never *Sperum*.

C H A P. XIX.

Of Words irregular in Declension.

SOME Nouns in *Latin* are not declin'd at all.

Some are declin'd into some Cases, and not into others. (1)

Some are declin'd in one Number, and not in the other. (2)

Some are declin'd after two Declensions. As, Some after the First and Second. (3) Some after the First and Third. (4) Some after the Second and Third. (5) Some after the Second and Fourth. (6) Some after the Third and Fourth. (7) Some after the Third and Fifth. (8) Some are declin'd after two Declensions, in some Cases only. (9)

A Word compounded of two intire Nominative Cases, is declin'd in both; as, *Respublica*, *Reipublica*. (10) Those that are compounded of a Nominative Case, and an Oblique Case, are only vary'd in the Nominative Case; as, *Paterfamilias*, *Patrisfamilias*, &c.

Notes on C H A P. XIX.

(1) **V**id. Cap. 8. of the Cases.

(2) *Vid.* Cap. 2. of the Numbers.

(3) The Names of Sciences are commonly declin'd after the First Declension in the Singular Number, and after the Second in the Plural; as, Nom. Singular *Grammaticæ* or *Grammatica*, Gen. *Grammaticæ*. Pluraliter, Nom. *Grammatica*, *Grammaticorum*: So *Dialectica*, *Rhetorica*, *Æthica*, *Physica*, &c. Rhen.

(4) Such as, *Orestes*, *Orontes*, *Chremes*, *Laches*, *Catchas*, *Pascha*, *Schema*, Gen. *Schemæ* or *Schematis*; *Huc processi sic cum servile Schemâ*, Plaur.

(5) Of this kind are reckon'd *Mulciber*, and *sequester*; and also *glomus* and *vesper*, unless we allow *glomer* and *vesperus* in the Nominative.

minative. But especially, many Nouns ending in *es*, coming from Greek Nominative Cases in *eus*, are declin'd both after the Second and Third Declension; as, *Ulysses* makes the Genitive *Ulyssæi* or *Ulyssis*; *Achilles*, *Achillei* or *Achillis*. Then the Poets from the Genitive Case *Ulyssæi* and *Achillei*, take away *e*, and make it *Ulyssi* and *Achilli*; as, *Nec cursus duplicis per mare Ulyssæi*, Hor. *Duri miles Ulyssi*, Virg. *Classis Achillei*, Hor. *Immitis Achilli*, Virg. Yea, many that do not come from Greek Nouns in *eus*, but *us*; as, Genitive *Herculi*, *Pericli*, *Periplectomeni*, *Ariobarzani*, *Aristoteli*, *Demostheni*, *Euripidi*; as, *Dic hoc magni pupille Pericli*, Pers. *Non vides ipsum Aristoteli discipulum*, Cic. These are supposed to be in imitation of the *Æolicks*; who, instead of the Termination *us*, us'd *eus*; as, Περικλέους, Ἀριστοτέλους, &c.

(6) There are many Nouns now us'd in the Second Declension, which were antiently of the Fourth; such as, *cibus*, *fagus*, *fasus*, *humus*, *leſus*, *somnus*, *sonus*, *succus*, *susurrus*, *venius*, *vulgus*, &c. *Oxf. Gram.* And many now us'd in the Fourth Declension, which were antiently of the Second; such as, *astus*, *arcus*, *adſpectus*, *exercitus*, *fluctus*, *gemitus*, *luctus*, *ornatus*, *partus*, *piscatus*, *portus*, *quæſtus*, *sonus*, *ſtrepitus*, *sumptus*, *tumultus*, &c. Which is evident by that of *Quintilian*; *Quid de aliis dicam, cum ſenatus, ſenatus, ſenatus, an ſenatus, ſenati, ſenato, facias incertum ſit?*

(7) Some are of the Third and Fourth; as, *ſpecus ſpecus*, or *ſpecus ſpecoris*, *penus penoris*, or *penus*; ſo *acus aceris*, or *acus*, but not in the ſame Signification.

(8) *Plebes*, *requies*, and *fames*, of the Third and Fifth.

(9) *Colus* (a Diſtaff) *cornus*, *laurus*, *pinus*, are both of the Second and Fourth Declension, in the Genitive and Ablative Singular; and in the Nominative and Accuſative Plural; in the reſt of the Caſes only of the Second. *Domus* in the Vocative Singular, in the Nominative, Vocative, Dative and Ablative Plural, is of the Fourth; in the reſt of the Caſes, of both: For *Horace* uſes *domo* in the Dative, and *Plautus* *doma* in the Ablative: Although the Old Verſe ſays; *Tolle me, mi, mu, mis, ſic variato domus*. *Domi* denotes the Place where one dwells, but *domus* denotes the Building: So that, *Sum domi* ſignifies, *I am at home*; but, *Part domus ruit*, *A Part of the Houſe is fall'n*. So that *domi* is never joyn'd with any Adjective, except a Poſſeſſive. *Quercus* in the Genitive, Singular and Plural, is both of the Second and Fourth; in the reſt, only of the Fourth. It is uſual to find Words of the ſame Signification, in different Terminations, of different Genders and Declenſions.

(10) Except *alteruter*, *alterutra*, *alterutrum*, *alterutriuſ*, &c.

C H A P. XX.

Of Adjectives, and their Gender and Declension.

ALL Adjectives are of all Genders. (1)
 There are Three sorts of Nouns Adjectives :
 Some have Three Terminations in the Nominative
 Case ; Some have Two ; Some have but One.

In those that have Three Terminations, the First is
 of the Masculine Gender, the Second of the Feminine,
 the Third of the Neuter.

In those that have Two Terminations, the First is
 both Masculine and Feminine, and the Second is
 Neuter. (2)

When an Adjective hath but one Termination, that
 Termination is of all Genders. (3)

Those that are of Three Terminations, are declin'd
 in the Masculine and Neuter Gender, after the Second
 Declension ; and in the Feminine, after the First. Those
 that are of Two Terminations, and those that are but
 of One, are declin'd after the Third.

An Example of the first sort :

Singulariter,	{	Nom. bonus, bona, bonum.	} Pluraliter,	{	Nom. } boni, bonæ, bona.
		Voc. bone, bona, bonum.			Voc. }
		Gen. boni, bonæ, boni.			G. bonorum, bonarum, bonorum.
		Dat. bono, bonæ, bono.			Dat. bonis.
		Acc. bonum, bonam, bonum,			Acc. bonos, bonas, bona,
		Abl. bono, bonâ, bono.			Abl. bonis.

So, *niger, nigra, nigrum ; satur, saturâ, saturum ; dex-*
ter or *dexterus, dextera, dexterum.*

But

But here *Note*, That some few of these vary from this common way of declining, and make their Genitive in *ius*, and their Dative in *i*. (4)

Alius is declin'd ; Nom. *alius*, *alia*, *aliud* ; Gen. *alius* ; Dat. *alii* : All the rest of them make the Neuter in *um* ; as, Nom. *unus*, *una*, *unum* ; Gen. *unius* ; Dat. *uni*, &c. (5)

Examples of the second sort :

Singulariter,	{	Nom. }	}	tristis, triste,	}	Pluraliter,	{	Nom. }	}	tristes, tristia.
		Voc. }						Voc. }		
		Gen. }						Gen. }		
		Dat. }						Dat. }		
		Acc. }						Acc. }		
		Abl. }		tristi.				Abl. }		tristibus.

So,

Singulariter,	{	Nom. }	}	melior, melius.	}	Pluraliter,	{	Nom. }	}	meliores, meliora.
		Voc. }						Voc. }		
		Gen. }						Gen. }		
		Dat. }						Dat. }		
		Acc. }						Acc. }		
		Abl. }		meliore, or meliori.				Abl. }		melioribus.

Some of those that end in *is*, and *e*, do abound, and have also a Masculine Gender in *er*. (6)

Some Adjectives are declin'd both with Two Terminations, and with Three ; that is, both like *tristis*, and also like *bonus*. (7)

An Example of the third sort :

Singulariter,	{	Nom. }	}	felix.	}	Pluraliter,	{	Nom. }	}	felicis, and felicia.
		Voc. }						Voc. }		
		Gen. }						Gen. }		
		Dat. }						Dat. }		
		Acc. }						Acc. }		
		Abl. }		falice, and felici.				Abl. }		felicibus.

So,

So *vetus*, Gen. *veteris*; *memor*, *memoris*; *prudens*, *prudentis*; *solers*, *solertis*; *compos*, *compotis*; *inops*, *inopis*; *locuples*, *locupleris*.

Some Adjectives seem to be turn'd into Substantives, by the constant Suppression of their Substantive. (8)

Some Adjectives signifie both Actively and Passively. (9)

Some Adjectives want the Singular Number; as, *singuli*, *bini*, *terni*, &c. (10)

Notes on CHAP. XX.

(1) **A**djectives properly have no Gender; but the meaning is, they are apply'd to Substantives of all Genders. *Sanct.*

(2) Some few are said to be of the Masculine Gender, in the First Termination; and of the Feminine and Neuter, in the Second; as, *viator*, *vitrix*, Oxf. Gram.

(3) But there are many Adjectives of one Termination, that are seldom used in the Neuter Gender; especially, not in the Plural Number: Such are, *Ales*, *artifex*, *comes*, *compos*, *degener*, *dives*, *bebes*, *hospes*, *infans*, *inops*, *impos*, *intercus*, *locuples*, *memor*, *pauper*, *præpes*, *puber*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *supplex*, *teres*, *uber*, *vigil*, &c. Yet we read, *Ingenium dives*, Ovid. *Infans saxum*, Id. *Opus superstes*, Id. *Tricuspidè telo*, Id. *Imperium comes*, Lucret. *Ales plumbum*. Sil. *Sospes depositum*, Juv. *Paupere tecto*, Hor.

(4) These are, *unus*, *totus*, *solus*, *ullus*, *nullus*, *alius*, *alter*, *uter*, *uterque*, *neuter*. Yet antiently these were declin'd regularly, like *bonus*; as, *Mibi solæ ridiculo fuit*, Ter. *Tam nulli consilii sum*, Id. *Studiosus nullæ rei alia est*, Plaut. *Alteræ dum narrat*, Ter. *Maris, fœmina & neutri*, Var. *Unus* seldom hath the Plural Number, but when it is joyn'd with a Word that lacketh the Singular; as, *Una litteræ*, *una mania*. Yet Plautus says, *Unos sex dies*,
F

dies, for *solos*. When *Virgil* says, *Satis una superque vidimus excidia*, it is by a *Synecdoche*, usual with the Poets.

(5) *Alius* makes *aliud*, from the old Nominative *alis* and *alid*. *Conjugium quo non fortior aufit alis*, Catul. *Sic alid ex alio nunquam desister viri*, Lucret. Many Grammarians contend, that these Adjectives are to be reckon'd amongst the Pronouns, (as also are, *reliquus*, *caterus*, *omnis*, *nemo*, *universus*, *ambo*, *duo*, *cujus*, *tot*, *quot*, *quotus*, and the like) because they do only secondarily signify the thing, when it is put for a Noun. If so, no wonder that they make the Genitive in *ius*, and Dative in *i*; as do *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*. Vid. *Oxf. Gram.*

(6) These are,

Campester, *volucer*, *celeber*, *celer*, atque *saluber*,
Junge pedester, *equester*, & *acer*, *junge paluster*,
Ac alacer, *silvester*.

But indeed, the Termination *er*, was antiently Feminine; as, *Æstatem autumnus sequitur*, *pōst acer Hyems*, Enn. L. 16.

(7) Such are the Compounds of *Arma*, *animus*, *bacillum*, *clivus*, *frænum*, *jugum*, *nervus*, *somnus*; as, *inermis*, *inermis*, or *inermis*, *a, um*. *Hilarus* and *gracilis* are seldom read.

(8) Examples of Masculine Adjectives, that are us'd Substantively, or at least, that have their Substantives commonly understood, are; *Amicus*, *amulus*, *aulicus*, *rusticus*, *stultus*, *villicus*, *vicinus*, *mortalis* (*subaudi homo*;) *annularis*, *auricularis*, *index* (*digitus*;) *natalis* (*dies*;) *maialis*, *nefrens* (*porcus*;) *maxillaris* (*dens*;) *molaris* (*dens* or *lapis*;) *Martius*, *Aprilis*, *Quintilis*, *Sextilis* (*mensis*;) *Oriens*, *Occidens* (*Sol*;) *confluens*, *profluens*, *torrens* *fluvius* (according to *Vossius*, *amnis*;) *cornipes*, *sonipes* (*equus*.) — Of Feminines; *Vidua*, *vicina*, *prægnans* (*mulier*;) *fera* (*bestia*;) *patria*, *cremus*, *arida*, *continens* (*terra*;) *consonans*, *vocalis*, *semivocalis*, *muta* (*littera*;) *diphongus* (*syllaba*;) *tertiana*, *quartana* (*febris*;) *curulis* (*sella*;) *frigida* (*aqua*;) *bipennis* (*securis*;) *bidens* (*ovis* or *securis*;) *biremis*, *triremis* (*navis*.) — Of Neuters; *Alium*, *profundum* (*mare*;) *præsens*, *præteritum*, *futurum* (*tempus*;) *suburbanum* (*rus* or *prædium*.) When an Adjective of the Masculine Gender occurs, without a particular Substantive express'd or understood, the general word *homo* is to be understood;

flood; if of the Neuter Gender, then the general word *negotium* (thing) is understood; as the Greek *ἔργον*, *πονηρὸν* *συκοφαντίας*, De-
 most. *Malum Sycophantia*: So the *Latins*; *Triste lupus stabulis*:
Turpe senex miles, *Turpe senilis amor*, sc. *negotium*. *Plus, quid, ali-*
quid, ecquid, quiddam, quippiam, also *accidens, antecedens, con-*
sequens, are either us'd Substantively; or *negotium* is understood to
 them.

(9) Such as, *cæcus, surdus, formidolosus, felix, memor, immemor,*
ignotus, tristis, &c. *Cæcâ nocte*, i. e. *obscurâ*; *Cæca vestigia*, i. e.
latentia, or, *quæ non sunt cernenda*. *Verbera surda*, i. e. *quæ non*
possunt audiri. *Formidolosus homo*, *ipetimidus*; but, *Tempora formi-*
dolosa, i. e. *metuenda*. *Felix* sometimes signifies Actively, *Sis fe-*
lix, i. e. *propitius*, Virg. *Memor* and *immemor* sometimes signifie
 Passively, *Memorem Funonis ob iram*, i. e. *memoriâ retentam*, Virg.
Exprobratio immemoris beneficii, i. e. *quod oblivioni traditum est*,
 Ter. *Ignotus* is sometimes us'd Actively; *Nequis erret ignotus*,
 Quintil. *Tristis homo*, i. e. *mæstus*; *Triste nuncium*, i. e. *tristi-*
tiam afferens, Vid. Rben. Paralip.

(10) Yet the Poets will sometimes use even these Distributives in
 the Singular Number; *Ternæ consurgunt ordine remi*, Virg. *Singu-*
lum video vestigium, Plaut.

C H A P. XXI.

Of the Comparing of Adjectives.

Comparison, is the varying of Adjectives by Degrees. Adjectives, whose signification may increase, or be diminished, may be compar'd (1); if the usage of the *Latin Tongue* do not hinder. (2)

There are three Degrees of *Comparison*, commonly call'd, the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

The *Positive Degree* is the first voice of the Adjective, which signifies Simply and Absolutely, without any Excess; as, *durus, hard; mollis, soft*. These have several ways of ending in the *Nominative Case*. (3)

The *Comparative Degree* somewhat exceedeth the signification of the *Positive*, with this sign *more*; as, *durior, harder, or more hard; mollior, softer, or more soft*. (4)

These are all Adjectives of *Two Terminations*, and end in *or* and *us*, declin'd after the *Third Declension*. (5)

The *Superlative* exceedeth the *Positive* in the highest measure, with the sign *most*; as, *durissimus, hardest, or most hard; mollissimus, softest, or most soft*. (6) These are all Adjectives of *Three Terminations*, in *us, a, um*, declin'd after the *First and Second Declension*.

The *Comparative* is formed from the first case of the *Positive*, that endeth in *i*, by putting thereto *or* and *us*; as, from *duri* is formed *durior, durius*; from *mollis*, *mollior, mollius*.

The *Superlative* is formed from the first case of the *Positive*, that endeth in *i*, by putting thereto *s* and *simus*; as, from *duri* is formed *durissimus*; from *mollis*, *mollissimus*.

But

But if the *Positive* end in *er*, the *Superlative* is formed from the *Nominative Case*, by putting to *rimus*; as, *pulcher*, fair; *pulcherrimus*, fairest, or most fair; *niger*, black; *nigerrimus*, blackest, or most black.

There are three *Adjectives Positives* ending in *lis*, that form the *Superlative* degree, from the *Nominative Case*, by changing *is* into *limus*, viz. *Facilis*, *humilis*, *similis*, with their *Compounds*. (7)

Those *Adjectives Positives* that end in *us*, and have a Vowel coming before *us*, (which is call'd *us pure*) are seldom compar'd after these Rules: But their *Comparative Degree* is made by taking *magis*, more, and their *Superlative* by taking *maxime*, most; as, *pius*, godly; *magis pius*, more godly; *maxime pius*, most godly. (8)

These five *Adjectives* are compar'd quite beside Rule (rather in signification than in word. *)

<i>Bonus, melior, optimus.</i>	}	{	<i>Malus, pejor, pessimus.</i>	(9)
<i>Magnus, major, maximus.</i>			<i>Parvus, minor, minimus.</i>	
<i>Multus, plurimus.</i>	}	{	<i>Multum, plus, plurimum.</i>	
<i>Multa, plurima.</i>				

Some *Positives* are not compar'd at all. (10)

Some want the *Positive* only. (11)

Some want the *Comparative* only. (12)

Some want the *Superlative* only. (13)

Some want both *Positive* and *Superlative*. (14)

Some *Comparatives* and *Superlatives* are form'd from *Superlatives*. (15)

Lastly, Some *Substantives* are compar'd, abusively, in imitation of *Adjectives*. (16)

Notes on CHAP. XXI.

(1) **Y**Es, some whose signification cannot encrease, nor be diminish'd, are sometimes found compar'd; their Collation with words of another kind requiring it; so they say, *Surdior axis, cæcior talpa, mutior pisce, barbarior Turcâ*, Rhen. Paralip.

(2) For many whose signification admits of Increase and Decrease, yet are not allow'd Comparison; the usage of the Language forbidding it; such as, *almus, balbus, canorus, canus, crispus, cicur, claudus, delirus, degener, dispar, egenus, magnanimus, mancus, memor, mussus, mirus, opimus, pradius*, &c. Those Positives that the Latins most commonly refuse Comparison to, may be reduced to these Heads or Sorts; 1. Nouns Gentiles; as, *Romanus*. 2. Possessives; as, *Patrius*. 3. Numerals; as, *Primus*. 4. Nouns that denote Matter; as, *Aureus*. 5. Diminutives; as, *Verulus*. 6. Interrogatives; as, *Qualis*. 7. Nouns denoting Time; as, *Hesternus*. 8. Participles in *us*; as, *Amandus*. 9. Nouns in *bundus*; as, *Errabundus*, (yet we find *tremebundus* in *Columella*.) 10. Nouns in *plex*; as, *duplex* (except *simplex* and *multiplex*.) 11. Nouns ending in *mus*; as, *Legitimus*. 12. In *vus*, Verbals; as, *Fugitivus*; for *festivus* makes *festivissimus*. 13. Compounds of *fero, gero, facio*, but we find *mirificissimus*, Ter. There are some others besides these, which must be known by Reading: Yet it cannot be deny'd, that even some of these also, sometimes, are found in the Comparative or Superlative Degree; as, *opimior, colendissimus*.

(3) These endings are *er, es, is, us, ns, rs, x*; as, *Pulcher, luciples, fortis, doctus, sapiens, solers, felix*.

(4) *Priscian, Rhenius*, and since them *Danæsus*, were of opinion, That the Comparative Degree sometimes signifies diminutively; (or deminutively, as *Rhenius* contends that it should be Written) as, *Tristior & lachrymis oculos suffusa nitenti*, Virg. i. e. say they, *subtristis*; but indeed in such kind of Speaking, the word *aquo* or *solito* are understood; (which are also sometimes express) and so it still encreases. The Comparative rather seems sometimes to be put for the Positive; as, *sapius* for *sape*: And in that of *Virgil, Arma diu senior desueta trementibus ævo Circumdat nequicquam humeris*, *Æneid. 1.* In an Elegant way of Speaking, the Comparative is sometimes made to exceed the Superlative; as, *Vale, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade te mihi quidem esse charissimum, sed multo fore chariorem, si salubris monumentis præceptisq; latabere*, Cic. *Meliorem optimo genuis,*

genuit, Plin. *Vid. infra*, 6. Sometimes the word *magis* is put redundantly with the *Comparative Degree*; as, *μᾶλλον* is in *Greek*, *nihil invenies hoc certo magis certius*, Plaut. *Qui queat optato magis esse beator ævo*, Vir. in *Gulice*.

(5) Except *plus*, some of those also that want the *Superlative Degree* (*Vid. infra*) are scarce found in the *Neuter Gender* in us.

(6) Yet the *Superlative* sometimes seems to signify not so much the *Degree*, as the *Certainty* of the thing; as, *Deus omnipotentissimus*, i. e. *citra dubium omnipotens*; *mala presentissima*, i. e. *certe presentia*. A *Superlative* without a *Genitive Case* after it, is Translated by *valde*, *very*; with a *Genitive Case* by *maxime*, *most*, Voss. When the *Latins* would express a thing to the utmost, (if it were possible, higher than the highest) they put *quàm* to the *Superlative*; as, *quàm maxime*.

(7) Viz. *Difficilis*, *dissimilis*, *consimilis*, *verisimilis*. Some add to these, *agilis*, *docilis*, *gracilis*; but they are rejected, as wanting good Authority, by Rhen. Voss. and Oxf. Gr. But *imbecillis* makes *imbecillimus*, as well as *imbecillissimus*; *Quantulum autem sapientiamus, si imbecillius fortior est*, Sen. Ep. Rhenius quotes *utillimus*, out of *Cassiodorus*.

(8) Yet many of these are found compar'd regularly: So we read *Piissimus*, *ille juvenis ante hoc crimen piissimus*, Quintil. Though *Cicero* blames the word: *O fidissimi piissimiq; civium*, Curt. *Vacuissimus*, Ovid. So we read, *perpetuior*, *perpetuissimus*; *arduior*, *arduissimus*; *innocior*, *industrior*, *exiguus*, *injurius*, *necessarior*, *strenuissimus*, *tenuior*, *tenuissimus*, *egregius* for *egregius*, *egregiissimus*; as, *Egregius canat meliusque miserrimus horum*, Juven. There are many others in *Plautus*, as harsh and uncouth as these; such as, *verberabilissimus*, *spissigradissimus*, *exclusissimus*, *occissimus*, &c.

* As others are compar'd in word, not in signification; as, *novus*, *new*; *novissimus*, *last*.

(9) *Melior*, quasi *mavelior*; *optimus* quasi *optatissimus*; *pejor* quasi *peffior*, and *peffimus* a *peffum*; *major*, formerly *magior* (whence remains *magis*) quasi *magnior*, Scal. *maximus* per Sync; for *magnissimus*: *Minor* a *minus*, and that from *μινος* little; *minimus*, of old they said *parvissimus*, *parvissima corpora*, Lucret. *plus*, a *πλεον*. There are besides these, other irregular Comparisons; as, *vetus*, *terior*, *veterrimus* (ab antiquo *veter*, cum *veter* occubuit *Priamus*, Enn.) *nequam*, *nequior*, *nequissimus* (ab antiquo *nequus*;) *maturus*, *maturior*, *maturissimus* or *maturimus* (ab antiquo *matur*;) *maledicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*: but *veridicus* and

causidicus are not compar'd;) the Compounds of *volo* and *facio*; as, *benevolus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*; *magnificus*, *magnificentior*, *magnificentissimus*; but *mirificus*, *mirificissimus*, Ter. *Nuperus*, *nuperior*, *nuperrimus*; *exterus* and *exter*, *exterior*, *extremus* or *extimus*; *inferus*, *inferior*, *infimus* and *imus*; *superus*, *superior*, *supremus* and *summus*; *posterus*, *posterior*, *postremus* or *postumus*; *Citer*, *citerior*, *citimus*; *inter* or *interus*, *interior*, *intimus*; *ulter*, *ulterior*, *ultimus*: (these two last are obsolete Adjectives, Oxf. Gr.) *Prior*, *proprius*, *diutior*, *sapius*, either want *Positives*, or are formed from *Positives* out of use; for it doth not seem reasonable, that any *Adjectives*, *Comparatives*, or *Superlatives* should be formed from *Prepositions* or *Adverbs*; which are of a different rank from *Adjectives*: Now those words that are of a different rank, must also differ in *Essence*; but the *Comparative* denotes the excess of his *Positive*, yet keeping its *Essence*.

(10) *Vid. supra.* (2)

(11) *Deterior*, *deterrimus*; *ocior*, *ocissimus*; ab obsoleto *deter* (*quod a detero, quia detrita sunt deteriora*) & a *Graco* *αὐτός*, *potior a potis*.

(12) Such are, *Inclutus*, *inclutissimus*; *inviatus*, *inviatissimus*; *novus*, *novissimus*; *meritus*, *meritissimus*; *sacer*, *sacerrimus*; *inviatus*, *inviatissimus*; As also, *diversus*, *falsus*, *fidus*, *persuasus*, *invisus*, *consultus*, *apricus*, *bellus*; Some of which are scarce found, no not in the *Superlative*.

(13) Such are, *Adolescens*, *adolescentior*; *juvenis*, *junior*; *senex*, *senior*; *dexter*, *dexterior*; *sinister*, *sinisterior* (for *dextimus* and *sinistimus* are taken for *Positives*) *proximus* (used for a *Positive*) *proximior*; *satur*, *saturior*; *supinus*, *supinior*; *infinitus*, *infinitior*; Cic. So also, *taciturnus*, *communis*, *salutaris*, *optimus*, *declivis*, *longinquus*, & *forteglia perpauca*. *Dives* and *Dis*, are found used in all degrees; *Rhen*.

(14) These are only *Anterior* and *Licentior*.

(15) *Si quid est novissimo extremius*, Apul. *Omnium nationum postremissimum*; *Gracchus apud Gel. l. 25. cap. 12. Ut minimissimus digitorum vivat*, Arnob. *adv. gentes lib. 5. Mart. Proximior*, Ovid.

(16) This is done with respect to some *Quality* lodg'd in those *Substantives*; *O patruē mi patruissime*, Plaut. *Nullus me est hodie pœnus, pœnior*; So, *neronior*, *cinadior*, *oculissimus*, Pl. *Philosophissimus*, Cod. Justin.

C H A P. XXII.

Of Pronouns ; their Declensions, &c.

A *Pronoun*, is a part of Speech declin'd with Case, us'd instead of a Noun, importing some difference of Person. (1)

There are Fifteen *Pronouns*; *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostrâs, vestrâs*, with their Compounds. (2) To which may be added, *cujâs, cujus, (cujâ, cujum,)* *qui* and *quis*, with their Compounds. (3) *Ego, tu, sui*, are Substantives; all the rest are Adjectives. (4)

There are five kinds of *Pronouns*, as to their signification. *Demonstratives*; *ego, tu*, and sometimes, *ille, iste, hic, is*, and their Compounds. (5) *Relatives*; *ille, ipse, is, idem, qui*, and sometimes *hic* and *iste*. (6) *Reciprocal*s; *sui* and *suus*. (7) *Interrogatives*; *quis* or *qui, cujus* and *cujâs*. (8) *Possessives*; *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*. (9) *Gentiles*; *nostrâs, vestrâs, cujâs*. (10)

Ego is never us'd in the Vocative; the rest very seldom, except *tu, meus, noster* and *nostrâs*. (11)

Ego, tu, sui, are of the First Declension of *Pronouns*, and be thus declin'd,

Singulariter,	{	Nom. <i>ego</i> ,	}	Pluraliter,	{	Nom. <i>nos</i> ,	}
		Gen. <i>mei</i> .				Gen. <i>nostrum</i> or <i>vestri</i> .	
		Dat. <i>mibi</i> .				Dat. <i>nobis</i> .	
		Acc. <i>me</i> .				Acc. <i>nos</i> .	
		Abl. <i>me</i> .				Abl. <i>nobis</i> .	
Singulariter,	{	Nom. }	}	Pluraliter,	{	Nom. }	}
		Voc. }				Voc. }	
		Gen. <i>tui</i> .				Gen. <i>vestrum</i> or <i>vestri</i> .	
		Dat. <i>tibi</i> .				Dat. <i>vobis</i> .	
		Acc. <i>te</i> .				Acc. <i>vos</i> .	
Abl. <i>te</i> .	Abl. <i>vobis</i> .						

Sui

Sui hath no Nominative nor Vocative Case : in the rest of the Cases, one word serves for both Numbers, Thus :

Sing. Plu.	{	Gen. <i>sui</i> , of himself, or of themselves.	{	
		Dat. <i>sibi</i> , to himself, or to themselves.		
		Acc. <i>se</i> , himself, or themselves.		
		Abl. <i>se</i> , from himself, or from themselves. (12)		

Hic, ille, iste, ipse, qui and *quis*, are of the Second Declension of Pronouns, and be thus declined : (13)

Singulariter,	{	Nom. <i>hic, hac, hoc.</i>	{	Pluraliter,	{	Nom. <i>hi, he, hæc.</i>	{	
		Gen. <i>hujus.</i>				Gen. <i>horum, harum, horum.</i>		
		Dat. <i>hisc.</i>				Dat. <i>his.</i>		
		Acc. <i>hunc, hanc, hoc.</i>				Acc. <i>hos, has, hæc.</i>		
		Abl. <i>hoc, hæc, hoc.</i>				Abl. <i>his.</i>		(14)

Ipse is declin'd like *unus*, and so are *ille* and *iste*, save only that they make their Neuter Gender in *ud*.

Nom. <i>ille, illa, illud.</i>	{	{	Dat. <i>illi.</i>	{	
Gen. <i>illius.</i>			Acc. <i>illum, illam, illud, &c.</i> (15)		

Singulariter,	{	Nom. <i>is, ea, id.</i>	{	Pluraliter,	{	Nom. <i>ii, ea, ea.</i>	{	
		Gen. <i>ejus.</i>				Gen. <i>eorum, earum, eorum.</i>		
		Dat. <i>ei.</i>				Dat. <i>iis or eis.</i>		
		Acc. <i>eum, eam, id.</i>				Acc. <i>eos, eas, ea.</i>		
		Abl. <i>eo, eâ, eo.</i>				Abl. <i>iis or eis.</i>		

So the Compound of it :

Sing.	{	Nom. <i>idem, eadem, idem.</i>	{	{	Dat. <i>eidem.</i>
		Gen. <i>eiusdem.</i>			Acc. <i>eundem, eandem, idem. &c.</i>

Singulariter,	{	Nom. <i>qui, quæ, quod</i> or <i>quid.</i>	{	Pluraliter,	{	Nom. <i>qui, quæ, quæ,</i>	{	
		Gen. <i>cujus.</i>				G. <i>quorum, quarum, quorum.</i>		
		Dat. <i>cui.</i>				Dat. <i>quibus</i> or <i>queis.</i>		
		A. <i>quem, quam, quod</i> or <i>quid.</i>				Acc. <i>quos, quas, quæ.</i>		
		Abl. <i>quo, quâ, quo,</i> or <i>quî *</i>				Abl. <i>quibus</i> or <i>queis.</i>		

* in all Genders.

So is *quis* declin'd, save that it makes the Neuter Gender *quid* only ; which is commonly used Substantively. So also are the Compounds of *quis* declin'd. (16)

Mens, tuus, suus, cujus, noster, vester, are of the Third Declension of *Pronouns*, and are declin'd like Nouns *Adjectives* of Three Terminations; save only, that *mens* makes the Vocative Case Masculine Gender, *mi*, not *mec*. (17)

Nostrâs, vestrâs, and *cujâs*, are of the Fourth Declension of *Pronouns*, and are declin'd like Nouns *Adjectives* of One Termination

Singular.	{	Nom. <i>nostrâs</i> ,	}	{	Acc. <i>nostratem</i> & <i>nostrâs</i> .	}	(18)
		Gen. <i>nostratis</i> .			Abl. <i>nostratè</i> or <i>nostrati</i> . &c.		
		Dat. <i>nostrati</i> .					

Ego is of the First Person, *tu* is of the Second, and so is every Vocative Case. All other *Pronouns* and *Nouns* also are of the Third. (19)

Notes on CHAP. XXII.

(1) **L**earned *Grammarians* dispute against a *Pronoun's* being a distinct part of Speech ; but to exclude it, would now seem a bold Innovation. It is us'd instead of a *Noun* (therefore is called *Pronomen*, and by others, *Nomen vicarium*) when the using, or at least, the repeating of the Noun would be harsh : As, *I was with a Master, who taught me Grammar* ; or, *He taught me*, not *my Master taught me* : The use of it is, to make a Sentence Elegant and clear. But sometimes it is added to a *Noun* for Emphasis, or Perspicuities sake ; as, *Ego Caesar. Tu Romane* ; Sometimes a *Noun* is us'd instead of it.

(2) Such as, *egomet, tute, suimet, tuopte, suopte, illic, istic, tuipse, idem*.

(3) Such as, *quidam, quivis, quilibet, quispiam, aliquis, quis, &c.*

(4) *Quid*

(4) *Quid* in the Neuter Gender is reckon'd a Substantive; indeed it is often put Substantively; and so are his Compounds, *aliquid, ecquid, quicquid, quidpiam*. So are also the Genitive Cases Singular and Plural of *hic, ille, ipse, iste, qui* and *quis*; as, *pater bujus*; *mater illorum*. And so are the Masculine Genders of *meus, tuus, suus*, in the Plural Number, *Saluto tuos. Deus servat suos*.

(5) These, as also, *illic, istic, egoipse, tuipse*, do declare or demonstrate a thing present, to the Senses or Understanding, which was not spoken of before.

(6) These rehearse a Word or Sentence going before.

(7) These refer, or reciprocate themselves to the Substantive standing before the Verb (by a simple Reciprocation) whether it be Nominative or Accusative; as, *Petrus amat se*; or, *dico Petrum amare se*. But (by a Compound Reciprocation or Retranstition) if there be two Substantives, one before the Verb, the other after it, the reciprocal Pronouns refer to the former; as, *Hera jussit orare Chrysidem ut ad se veniat*, sc. *ad heram. Verres expulit Seiam ex villâ suâ*, sc. *verris*. If it be meant of *Seia's* Village, then it is better to say, *Ex villâ ejus*. Yet the Reciprocal may refer to the Substantive that comes after the Verb; when the Sence being preserved, the *Latin* may be changed into the former kind of Structure; as, *Voluptas sua trahit quemque*; where *sua* relates to *quemque*; because in other *Latin* it may be, *Quisque trahitur a voluptate suâ. Est dissoluti negligere quid de se quisque sentiat*; where *se* relates to *dissoluti*; because in other *Latin* it may be, *Dissolutus negligit quid de se quisque sentiat*. But when there is no danger of Ambiguity, the *Latins* sometimes use another Relative instead of the Reciprocal; as, *Omnes boni, quantum in ipsis fuit, Casarem occiderunt*, Cic. *ipsis* for *se*. *Non petit ut illum miserum putetis, nisi & innocens fuerit*, Quintil. *illum* for *se*. Sometimes they use the Reciprocal instead of a meer Relative; as, *Qua nox sibi proxima venit in somnis*, Luc. *Sis licet inde sibi tellus placata levisque*, Martial. *Respice Laërtē ut jam sua lumina condas*, Ovid. for *ejus*. They never reciprocate to a first or second Person coming before the Verb; but if any such word come before the Verb, because there is no danger of Ambiguity, we may indifferently use the Reciprocal, or a meer Relative; as, *Cepi columbam in nido suo*, or *nido ejus*.

(8) These Interrogatives, when they do not ask, are call'd Indefinites; as, *Nescio quis teneros oculus mihi fascinat agnos*, Virg. *Nescio quid turbarum hic geritur*, Ter. *Die cujus sit. Nescio quis*, or *nescio quid*, are as much as *aliquis* or *aliquid*.

(9) *Meus*,

[9] *Meus, tuus, suus*, do sometimes signifie the same with *mei juris, tui or sui juris*; *Solus meorum ego sum meus*, Cic. *Suus est in disputando*, Id. *Suus* also sometimes signifies the same with *proprius*; *Ita formâ simili ut mater sua non internôsse posset. Velle suum cuique est*. The Genitive Cases of *hic, ille, ipse, is, ipse, quis, qui*, do also sometimes signifie Possession; and so does *cujus, ja, jum*. It is generally said; that *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, are used when Possession is signified; but the Genitive Cases of the Primitives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, when Possession is signified. Let it be granted to be the most Elegant and usual way of Speaking; Yet Classick Authors do not always observe this difference; as, *Nam neque negligentia tuâ neque odio id feci tuo*, Ter. *tuâ* and *tuo*, for *tui*. *In eâ re utilitatem faciam ut cognoscas meam*, Id. i. e. *quâ ex me percipitur. Ut facile scires desiderio id fieri tuo*, Id. for *tui*. The Greeks often speak thus, τὸ ἐμὸν πόθον κατέπιπται, *desiderio meo extabuit*, Soph. This is most usual when the word *causâ* is in the Sentence; they rather choose to say, *causâ meâ*, than *causâ mei*. — *Causâq; meâ permulta rogatus feci*, Hor. *Absse te meâ causâ molestè fero, tuâ gaudeo*, Cic. So on the contrary, *Insidia alicujus* is us'd, *pro insidiis quæ alicui tenduntur*, by Cicero. Oxf. Gram.

(10) They are called *Gentiles* from *gens* a Nation, as belonging to a Nation or Countrey; but they also respect Families, Parties, Sects, Factions.

(11) Every Pronoun, except *ego* and *sui*, is found in the Vocative Case, *ut exemplis ostendere in promptu esset*, Oxf. Gram. *Exorare aliquis nostris ex ossibus ultior*, Virg. *Ipse æther suscipe m eas summe preces*, Ovid. *Tu mihi libertas illa paternâ vale*, Tib. *O nox, illa quæ tenebras attulisti*, Cic.

(12) *Ego, tu, sui*, are of all Genders. Instead of *me* and *te*, we often read *meâ* and *teâ*; instead of *nostrum* and *vestrum*, sometimes *nostrorum* and *vestrorum*; *Verum illud est, maximâque pars vestrorum intelligit*, Plaut. *Ego me, suimet, tu te, tutemet, sese*, are Compounds of these.

[13] *Egoipse, tuipse, suiipsius*, are Compounds of *ipse*. The Comical Poets use *ipsus* in the Nominative Case: and for *hic*, they use *hicce*.

(14) *Ille* and *ipse* are sometimes Compounded with *hic*; and then they are thus declined;

Singul.	{	Nom. <i>illic, illac, illoc, or illuc.</i>	{	Pural.	{	Nom. <i>illec.</i>
		Acc. <i>illunc, illanc, illoc, or illuc.</i>				Acc. <i>illac.</i>
		Abl. <i>illuc, illac, illoc.</i>				

So is *istic* declin'd.

(15) When

[15] When *hic* and *ille* are referred to two Antecedents, *hic* is usually referred to the latter and nearer, *ille* to the former. Yet sometimes we find the quite contrary; as, *Ut canis in vacuo leporem cum Gallicus arvo vidit, & hic pradam pedibus petiit, ille salutem; sic Deus, & virgo est, hic spe celer, illa timore*, Ovid, where *hic* relates to *Deus*. *Ille* and *iste* commonly differ thus, that *ille* is used in demonstrating the excellency of a Person or Thing; as, *Nasica ille prudens bis Consul*, Cic. But *iste* is used when we speak of any Person or Thing, with contempt and anger; as, *Istum amulum ab eâ pellito*, Ter.

(16) *Quicumque* makes only *quodcumque* in the Neuter Gender. *Quisquis* is declin'd throughout;

Nom. <i>quisquis, quæquæ, quicquid,</i>	} {	Dar. <i>cuicui.</i> &c.
Gen. <i>cujuscujus,</i>		

But the Feminine Gender, in the Nominative and Accusative Singular and Plural, are seldom read. In composition, *qui* is always set before; as, *quidam*: But *quis* is either set before or after; as, *quispiam, aliquis*. The Compounds, *aliquis, ecquis, nequis, nunquis, siquis*, make the Feminine Singular, and Neuter Plural in *a*, not in *e*: Yet sometimes we read *ecquæ* and *siquæ*. *Quis* was anciently used in the Feminine Gender, as well as the Masculine; and also *quisquam*: *Quis ea est mulier*, Plaut. Hence perhaps, *qui* remains of all Genders, (but seldom of the Neuter) in the Ablative Case Singular. Yea, *Plautus* uses *quicum* for *quibuscum* in the Plural.

(17) *Mi* of the old Nominative Case *mius*; as, *fili of filius*.

(18) These are contracted of the old Nominative, *nostratis* and *nostrate*, now out of use. The Termination *âs*, since the contracting of it, comprehends the Neuter Gender, as well as the Masculine and Feminine, as appears by *Gentiles* of the like Nature: *Ite Arpinâs*, Cic. *Bellum privernâs initum est*, Liv.

(19) *Ipse, idem*, and *qui*, are of all Persons; some say *is* also: except we choose rather to say, that *ego* and *tu* are understood in *Qui scribo, Ipse veni*, and the like. Some say that all Nouns are of all Persons: But it is more intelligible to Learners, to understand, *ego, tu, nos, vos*, when a Noun comes before a Verb of the first or second Person.

C H A P. XXIII.

Of a Verb, and its Moods.

A *Verb*, is a Part of Speech, that signifies either *Doing, Suffering, or Being*; (1) and is declin'd with *Mood and Tense*.

Verbs generally end either in *o*, or in *r*. (2)

Those that end in *o*, and signify any Action, (Transient or Immanent) and may be made *Passives* in any Person, (3) are *Actives*; as, *Amo, I love*; *Curro, I run*. (4)

Those that end in *o*, and signify a bare *Being*, or *Ceasing to be*, and can be made *Passives* in no Person, are *Neuters*; as, *Existo, I am*; *Intereo, I dye*; *Frigeo, I am cold*; *Ferveo, I am hot*; *Valeo, I am in Health*; *Egrotō, I am sick*. (5)

Those that end in *r*, and signify any Passion, and may be made *Actives* by putting away *r*, are *Passives*; as, *Amor, I am loved*; *Scribor, I am written*. (6)

Those that end in *r*, and cannot be made *Actives* by putting away *r*, and signify either Actively or Neutrally, are *Deponents*; as, *Sequor, I follow*; *Nascor, I am born*; *Morior, I dye*. (7)

So that there are four sorts of *Verbs*; *Actives, Neuters, Passives, and Deponents*. (8)

There belong to a *Verb* five things; *Mood, Tense, Number, Person, and Conjugation*.

There are four *Moods*; the *Indicative, the Imperative, the Subjunctive, and the Infinitive*. (9)

The *Verb* is put into the *Indicative Mood*, when we declare, affirm, or deny any thing, or ask a *Question*. (10)

The *Verb* is put into the *Imperative Mood*, when we bid or forbid, command, exhort, pray, or permit. (11)

The *Verb* is put into the *Subjunctive Mood*, when we express *wishing* or *desiring*; or when any of these signs, *may, can, might, would, should, could, or ought*, or certain *Conjunctions* come before it. (12) It doth not compleat a Sentence of it self; but depends upon some other *Verb* in the same Sentence, before or after it; and therefore, is call'd *Subjunctive*, or *Conjunctive*. In different respects, it is call'd *Optative, Potential, Permissive*. (13)

The *Verb* is put into the *Infinitive Mood*, when we signify a thing *to be*, or *not to be*, without any difference of *Number* or *Person*. It is commonly the latter of two *Verbs*, that come together without any *Nominative Case* between them: (14) And in *English*, hath usually the sign *to* before it. (15)

Note, That one Mood is often us'd for another. (16)

Notes on CHAP. XXIII.

(1) **I**F we go by signification, Verbs must needs be of four sorts: For either they signify Action, or Passion, or both, or neither. If Action, they are *Actives*; if Passion, they are *Passives*; if both, they are *Communes*, formerly much in use; now call'd *Deponents*, as having depon'd or laid down one of their Significations. (*Et si Communia, si Physicum genus attendamus, Deponentium naturam excedant; tamen ubi Grammaticum genus spectatur, Communia sub Deponentibus comprehenduntur*, Oxf. Gram.) If neither, but signify a bare *Existence*, or *ceasing to Exist*, they are *Neuters*; as, *intereo, orior, morior*.

(2) Except

(2) Except a few that are irregular and defective; as *sum*, with his Compounds; *possum*, *absum*, *adsum*, &c. *forem*, *inquam*.

(3) For there are many Actives, that cannot be made Passives in the First nor Second Person, for want of a fit Nominative Case; as, *aro*, *bibo*, &c. which yet are Passives in the Third Person; as, *Terra aratur*, *vinum bibitur*, *tota dormitur Hyems*. In a *Prosopopœia* of speaking, any of these may be used in the First or Second Person; as the Earth speaking, would say, *Aro*; and the Wine, *Bibor*; a Way, *Curro*, or *Ambulo*; Blood, *Sudo*. *Huc pertinent aio*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, & *id genus alia*, *etiamsi non habent passivum in or*, *Rhen*. So *Maneo*.

(4) Where-ever a Third Person Passive may be used, there is an Immanent Act suppos'd in the Verb in *o*; and that Verb ought to be therefore call'd Active; as, *sedeo* (sub. *sessionem*;) *sto* (sub. *stationem*;) so *cæno*, *prandeo*, *sudo*, *flo*, *spiro*, and many like. It is said, That some Verbs Actives are us'd Absolutely, being, as it were, turn'd into Neuters; such as, *Augeo*, *capero*, *crucio*, *decoquo*, *expedio*, *excudo*, *gesto*, *habeo*, *ingemino*, *insinuo*, *lavo*, *lenio*, *moveo*, *mutuo*, *pasco*, *pono*, *precipito*, *quasso*, *ruo*, *sedo*, *tondeo*, *turbo*, *vario*, *veho*, *verto*, *vestio*, *volvo*, *voluto*. But it is better to say, that there is an Ellipsis of some Accusative Case; as, *Terra movet*, for *movet se*. *Regium imperium in superbiam dominationemq; convertit*, *Salust*. for *convertit se*. See Examples of these, *Oxf. Gram.*

(5) There are many Verbs Neuters, or, at least, Verbs commonly of an Absolute Signification, which are sometimes us'd Actively, in a Transitive Signification; such as, *Abstineo*, *assuesco*, *celero*, *accelero*, *clamo*, *coeo*, *concionor*, *consto*, *deliro*, *despero*, *desino*, *differo*, *disputo*, *dubito*, *duro*, *ejulo*, *emergeo*, *eructo*, *erumpo*, *exeo*, *exhalo*, *festino*, *fleo*, *garrio*, *gemo*, *hyemo*, *illucesco*, *incipio*, *inoleasco*, *insanio*, *furo*, *insto*, *insuesco*, *juro*, *lato*, *latro*, *luceo*, *maneo*, *moror*, *musto*, *noceo*, *offendo*, *pasco*, *penetro*, *pergo*, *persevero*, *plaudo*, *propero*, *queror*, *remitto*, *requiesco*, *resulto*, *rideo*, *ruo*, *rutilo*, *sapio*, *spiro*, *sisto*, *sono*, *suscipio*, *supero*, *superfedeo*, *suppedito*, *transmitto*, *tardo*, *tinnio*, *trepido*, *vario*, *vergo*, *verto*, *vociferor*, *uro*. See Examples of all these, *Oxf. Gr.* If the Verb *sio* signifies Passively, and takes after it an Ablative Case of the Doer; yet so do not *vapulo*, *veneo*, *liceo*, *exulo*, as is commonly taught; these do not take after them properly an Ablative of the Doer, which is the Property of a Verb Passive. They take after them an Ablative Case of the thing; but the Examples that are brought to prove that they take after them an Ablative of the Doer, (to say nothing that they are suspected) will as well prove, that many other Verbs are of a Passive Signification, which never

came under that Suspicion ; as, *Periit ab Hannibale*, Plin. *Nihil valentius à quo intereat*, Cic. *Quis nolle ab isto ense mori ?* Lucan.

(6) Yet it seems, that there are some proper Passives, that are yet sometimes us'd in an Active Signification ; as, *Affector*, *avertor*, *bello*, *confeor*, *communicor*, *comperior*, *confilior*, *murmuro*, *nutricor*, *peragror*, *perlinor*, *pigneror*, *prævertor* (for *præverto*, but not in the Preterperfect Tense) *punior*, *quiritor*, *ruminor*, *sacrificor*, *saturor*, *spedor*, *suppeditor*, *usurpor*, &c. Examples of these see in *Oxf. Gram.*

(7) Yet it must be confess'd, that many of those that are now us'd in *or* as *Deponents*, were antiently us'd in *o* as *Actives* : Thus in good Authors we sometimes read *Adulo*, *alterco*, *assentio*, *comito*, *conficito*, *frutico*, *frustro*, *luxurio*, *lachrymo*, *medico*, *mereo*, *miro*, *modero*, *murmuro*, *munero*, *oscito*, *palpo*, *partio*, *imperiio*, *populo*, *posito*, *revertio*, *rumina*, *scruto*, *sciscito*, *vago*, *velifico*. See Examples of all these, *Danesh. Paralip.* Yea, in some very old Authors we read such Verbs as *Aucupo*, *auspico*, *auxilio*, *cachinno*, *coborto*, *commen-to*, *completeo*, *congregatio*, *progreo*, *consolo*, *contemplo*, *convivo*, *crimino*, *cuncto*, *expergisco*, *innito*, *lato*, *largio*, *lucto*, *miniio*, *molio*, *obsono*, *opino*, *opitulo*, *osculo*, *pacisco*, *patio*, *percontio*, *polliceo*, *pratio*, *præstolo*, *proficisco*, *recordo*, *refrago*, *suffrago*, *rixo*, *sortio*, *suavio*, *testio*, *tuto*. Vid. *Prisc.* Lib. 8. *Diomed.* Lib. 1. Besides these, there were of old many Verbs in *or*, that signify'd both Actively and Passively, usually call'd *Communes* ; whose Passive Signification is now mostly out of use, except it be in their Participles : Such are, *Abominor*, *adipiscor*, *admiror*, *adorior*, *adulor*, *aggredior*, *amplector*, *anteflor*, *arbitror*, *aspernor*, *assector*, *assequor*, *auguror*, *blandior*, *cavillor*, *commitor*, *completeor*, *consequor*, *consector*, *consolor*, *conspicor*, *criminor*, *demolior* and *immolior*, *detestor*, *dignor*, *dominor*, *enitor*, *experior*, *fari*, *fateor*, *frustror*, *glorior*, *hortor*, *imitor*, *insidior*, *interpretor*, *machinor*, *meditor*, *metior*, *moderor*, *modulor*, *molior*, *nanciscor*, *obliviscor*, *ordior*, *osculor*, *paciscor*, *percontor*, *periclitior*, *polliceor*, *populor*, *potior*, *precior*, *sector*, *stipulor*, *testor*, *tueor*, *veneror*, *vereor*, *ulciscor*, *utor*. See Examples of all these, *Oxf. Gram.*

(8) There are a few Verbs in *or*, that still retain both the Active and Passive Signification ; and so may be call'd *Communes* : Such are, *Amplector*, *aggredior*, *aspernor*, *calvor*, *criminor*, *consolor*, *dignor*, *depeculor*, *frustror*, *hortor*, *interpretor*, *osculor*, *stipulor*, *testor*. There were many others of this kind in use amongst the Antients, whose Commune Signification is now only retain'd in the Participles of the Preter Tense : Such as, *Comitatus*, *consequutus*, *detestatus*, *emendatus*;

titus, expertus, metatus, meditatus, oblitus, veneratus, velificatus. Omittenda sunt communia, quia penè exoleverunt, Oxf. Gram.

(9) Whereas the *Optative*, *Potential*, and *Subjunctive* agree in all things, there is no reason they should be distinguish'd: For if the Particles, *utinam*, *cum*, *si*, or any other being added, do make a distinct Mood, then might the *Indicative* Mood it self be distinguish'd into several Moods; for we say, *Cum amabo, si amabo, &c.* By the same reason also, there should be many Ablative Cases in a Noun, according as it is joyn'd with divers Prepositions; as, *à fratre, cum fratre, coram fratre, sine fratre, &c.* So that, as it is call'd the Ablative Case from its Principal Signification, though it signifie many other ways; so this Mood is call'd *Subjunctive*, or *Conjunctive*, from its Principal Use; because it doth not perfect a Sentence of it self, but is commonly joyn'd to a Verb of the *Indicative* Mood; as, *Cum veneris, scribam*; or because we subjoyn another thing to it; as, *Scribam cum veneris*; where Writing is subjoyn'd to Coming, *Oxf. Gram.*

(10) Yet the Future Tense of this Mood usually hath the Signification of the *Imperative*: *Quod superest, puerum Ciceronem curabis & amabis, ut facis, Cic. Reseres ergo hec, & nuncius ibis Pelidæ genitori, Virg. Tu hac flectis, Cic. Non occides, non furaberis, &c.* Sometimes it is used instead of the *Subjunctive*; as, *Quasi istuc erat magnum, Cic. for esset. Quid ago, for agam. Si est bellum civile, &c. for sit, Cic.*

(11) Yet this Mood seems sometimes to be us'd for the *Indicative*; as, *Si satura gregem suppleverit, aureus esto, Virg. Ecl. 6. for eris.*

(12) There are some Conjunctions, that rather take after them an *Indicative* Mood; as, *tamen, si, quippe, quando, quandoquidem*, when they signifie *for as much as*; *quod* and *cum*, when they signifie *whereas, as to what, as concerning that*; and *ut, as, such, since that*. Others choose a *Subjunctive* Mood after them; *ut, although*; *ut, qui, to the intent that; licet, though*; *ut, uti, utinam, that; ne, lest; quin, but; si, although*; *utpote cum, quippe cum*. Some are indifferent to both Moods; as, *si, fin, nisi, siquidem, quod, quia, quoniam, quamvis, etiamsi, cum* for *quandoquidem* or *quoniam*.

(13) This Mood is often us'd in *Wishing*, and expresses the *Optative* of the Greeks; *O mihi præteritos referat si Juppiter annos! Pers. Utinam istuc verbum ex animo & verè diceret, Ter.* Where note, that *utinam* signifies no more than *ut* or *uti, that*; and the Verb *opto, I wish*, is always understood before it; as, *utinam diceret, is opto ut diceret, I wish thou spokest.* This Mood is call'd *Potential*,

when the Verb hath such signs as *may, mayst, can, canst, &c.* before it; and *may* in *Latin* be made by *possum, debeo, or volo, I can, I ought, I would*: as, *Roget quis, One may ask*; i. e. *rogare possit*, Ter. *At tu dictis Albane maneres*, i. e. *debebas manere*, Virg. *Ego tibi non sum author*, i. e. *non velim esse author*. This Mood is also call'd *Permissive*, when the Verb permits or grants any thing; as, *Moriar si magis gauderem, si mihi id accidisset*, Cic. *Segnis inersque vocer*, Tibul. *Fuerint irati, fuerint cupidi, fuerint pertinaces*, Cic. *Verterit hunc dominus*, Pers. This Mood is often us'd in the Signification of the *Imperative*, and is put for it; as, *Tuâ quod nihil refert, percontari desinas*, for *desine*, Ter. *Accipias claves si quid opus erit tibi promptu*, for *accipe*, Plaut. *Nihil incommodo valetudinis tuæ feceris*, for *facito*, Cic.

(14) It is destitute of Number and Person; as, *lato venisse* may be us'd of any Person, one or more; and it is resolved into other Moods, so that it hath no Variation, but by vertue of them; as, *lato me venisse*, i. e. *quod venerim*: So that *Scaliger* denies it to be actually a Mood. It is often us'd for a Noun, especially in *Greek*: It is used after Adjectives, as well as after Verbs; as, *Dignus legi, Worthy to be read*.

(15) But many times it hath not the Sign before it.

(16) See Examples in the Moods afore-going. The *Infinitive* Mood is said to be often put for the *Preterimperfect Tense* of the *Indicative*; and many Examples are brought of it: Nothing more usual in some Authors, especially in *Salust*. And this is said to be by the Figure *Enallage*, which is a changing of one thing for another. But the Truth is, that *Infinitive* Mood that so often occurs with a Nominative Case before it, and so is said to be put for the *Preterimperfect Tense* of the *Indicative* Mood, depends upon a former Verb understood in *Latin*, for Elegancy and Brevity of speaking; which Verb is *incipit, caput, solet*, or the like.

C H A P. XXIV.

Of the Tenses, Numbers, Persons, and Conjugations of Verbs.

A Verb hath five Tenses, the *Present Tense*, the *Preterimperfect*, the *Preterperfect*, the *Preterpluperfect*, and the *Future*. (1)

Every Mood hath all these Tenses, except the *Imperative*, which hath only the *Present Tense*. (2)

The Verb is put into the *Present Tense*, when we speak of the time present ; and may have the signs, *do, dost, doth*, before it ; as, *Amo, I love, or do love*. (3)

The Verb is put into the *Preterimperfect Tense*, when we speak of the Time not perfectly past, and may have the signs *did or didst* before it ; as, *Amabam, I loved or did love*. (4)

The Verb is put into the *Preterperfect Tense*, when we speak of the Time perfectly past ; and may have the signs *have, hast, hath*, before it ; as, *Amavi, I have loved*. (5)

The Verb is put into the *Preterpluperfect Tense*, when we speak of the Time more than perfectly past ; and may have the signs *had or hadst* before it ; as, *Amaveram, I had loved*. (6)

The Verb is put into the *Future Tense*, when we speak of the Time to come ; and hath the signs *shall or will, shalt or wilt* before it ; as, *Amabo, I shall or will love*. (7)

Note that these Tenses are not used so exactly, but that one Tense is often put for another. (8)

Verbs have two *Numbers*, the *Singular* and the *Plural* (9); and in each Number Three Persons, which in the *Singular* Number are exprest by *I, thou, he*; and in the *Plural*, by *we, ye, they*. (10)

Verbs have Four *Conjugations*, or ways of declining. (11)

The First *Conjugation* hath *a* long before *re*, in the *Infinitive* Mood, of all Verbs in *o*; and before *ris* in the Second Person Singular of all Verbs in *or*; as, *amāre, amāris*. (12)

The Second hath *e* long in like manner before *re* and *ris*; as, *monēre, monēris*.

The Third hath *e* short in like manner before *re* and *ris*; as, *legere, legēris*.

The Fourth hath *i* long in like manner before *re* and *ris*; as, *audire, audīris*.

Verbs in *o* of the First Conjugation, have commonly a Consonant coming before *o*, (13) and make the Preterperfect Tense in *avi*, and their Supines in *atum*; (except a few) as, *amo, amavi, amatum*. (14)

Verbs of the Second Conjugation have *e* coming before *o*, and make the Preterperfect Tense in *ui*, and their Supines in *itum*; (except a few) (15) as, *monco, monui, monitum*.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation have commonly a Consonant coming before *o*, (16) and make their Preterperfect Tense and Supine differently, as will after appear; as, *bibo, bibi, bibitum; ico, ici, ictum*.

Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation have *i* coming before *o*, except *eo, quco*, and *vaneo*, (17) and make their Preterperfect Tense in *ivi*, and their Supine in *itum*; (except a few) as, *audio, audivi, auditum*.

The Preterperfect Tense is always formed from the Present Tense; and then from that Preterperfect Tense

is formed the Preterpluperfect Tense by changing *i* into *eram* with *e* short ; the Preterperfect Tense of the Subjunctive Mood by changing *i* into *erim*, and the Future by changing *i* into *ero*, the Preterpluperfect Tense by changing *i* into *issem*, and the Preterperfect Tense of the Infinitive by changing *i* into *isse*.

Verbs in *or* have properly no Preterperfect Tense.
(18)

Notes on CHAP. XXIV.

(1) **T**He Subjunctive Mood seems to have a Sixth Tense, which some call *futurum exactum*, or *perfectum*, which hath the signification both of the Preterperfect and Future Tense ; as, *De quo cum dixerō, totum hoc crimen peroravero* ; of which when I shall have spoken, I shall have finish'd this main Accusation, Cic. *Ei si cum in provinciam veneris, ego annum munus consecrero, I shall have finish'd. Tantas strages impune per urbes ediderit ?* Virg. *Shall he have made such havoc ? Nequicquam arcem servaverim*, Liv. *I should have kept the Tower in vain. Cum locutus fuero, When I shall have spoken.* Vid. cap. 26. (10)

(2) Some dispute for a Future Tense of the Imperative Mood ; as if *Ama* should be the present Tense, and *Amato* the Future ; and so in the Plural Number, *amate* the Present, and *amatote* the Future ; and Learned Grammarians are of this mind. But though we should suffer the Authority of *Varro* and *Priscian*, and others, to prevail in this matter ; yet it must be confest, that these Second Persons are used promiscuously in good Authors ; as, *Aut sis dura, nega ; si es non dura, venito*, Propert. *Et potum pastas age Tityre, Et inter agendum, Occursare capro, cornu ferit ille, caveo*, Eclog. 9. *Imperativus unicum tempus habet*, Voss.

(3) But the Present Tense of the Subjunctive Mood, sometimes denotes the Future time ; as, *De quā vinam aliquando tecum loquar*, Cic. *Vtinam temeraria dicar Criminibus falsis insimulasse virum !* Ovid. Sometimes it is put for the Preterimperfect Tense ; *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, Ter. for *esses* and *sentires*. Sometimes for the Preterperfect Tense ; *Accedo, quæ sis rogo*, Ter. for *accessi*, *rogavi*. Sometimes the Present Tense of the Infinitive

Mood is put for the Future ; *Progeniem sed enim Trojano à sanguine duci Audierat*, Virg. for *ducendam esse*.

(4) The Preterimperfect Tense of the Subjunctive Mood is often used for the Preterpluperfect ; *Si esset, unde id fieret, faceremus*, Ter. Adelp. 1. 2. for *Si fuisset, unde id fieri potuisset, fecissemus*. *Non crederem Evangelio, nisi Ecclesia*, &c. Aug. for *credidissem*.

(5) The Preterperfect Tense is often used for the Preterimperfect ; *Sancta mihi mater fuit, ea habitabat Rhodi*, Ter. for *erat* : It is often put for a simple Future ; *Cum Platone non invitus erraverim*, Cic. *Aufugerim potius quam redeam*, Ter. *Quis igitur drachmam reddet si dederim tibi*, Plaut. *Si te inde exemerim, ego pro te molam*, Ter. for *erravero, aufugero, dederò, exemerò*. Sometimes for the Preterpluperfect Tense : *Ni mea cura resistat, Jam flamme rulerint, inimicus & hausert ignis*, for *resistisset, tulissent, and hausisset*, Virg.

(6) The Preterpluperfect Tense is commonly used for the Preterperfect ; as, *dixerat* for *dixit*, immediately at the end of a Narration. And for the Future Tense ; *Magnum detrimentum Resperceperat, si illum non eruisset*, Sen. for *acceptura erat*. The Preterimperfect Tense denotes a thing begun, but not finish'd ; the Preterperfect Tense notes a thing compleated ; the Preterpluperfect notes a thing perfected, done before another thing, *Voss*.

(7) A Verb of the Future Tense is sometimes put with a Participle of the Future Tense, instead of a simple Future ; *Cum rediturus ero*, Mart. for *rediero*. *Tu procul absenti cura futurus eras*, Ovid. for *eris*.

(8) See Examples in the Tenses foregoing.

(9) The numbers seem sometimes to be put one for another, when a Verb stands between two Nominative Cases of divers Numbers. See the *Syntax* hereafter.

(10) The second Person is used for any Person whatsoever ; as, *dicas*, *Thou may'st say*, for *aliquis possit dicere*, *Some one may say* : *Omnes congruunt, unum cognovisti, omnes novisti* ; for *siquis unum cognoveris, omnes novisti*.

(11) Some few Verbs are Irregular, and under no one of these Conjugations.

(12) Except *dare* and his Compounds that make a short ; as, *circumdare, pessumdare, venundare, satisfare*.

(13) Yet it must be observed, that there are some Verbs of the first Conjugation, that have a Vowel coming before o ; as, *Beo, creo, fereo, meo, balneo, calceo, cuneo, laqueo, lineo*, with their Compounds ;

pounds; *illaqueo, delineo, nausco, nucleo, enucleo*. Some have *i* before *o*; such as, *Amplio, basio, boo, calcio, caramidio, centurio, succenturio, crucio, decurio, emacio, fascio, friso, furio, glacio, bio, latio, nuncio, pio, radio, retatio, satio, saucio, socio, summio, spolio, striso, travio, vario, vitio*: and all Verbs that end in *eo, io, uo*, deriv'd from words that have *e, i, u*, before their last Vowel, are of the first Conjugation; as, *tenuo* from *tenuis*.

(14) Those few excepted shall be observ'd in the Rules about the *Preterperfect* Tense, and Supines of Verbs.

(15) Concerning the excepted, see also in the Rules hereafter.

(16) But those that end in *uo* are generally of the Third Conjugation also; as will appear hereafter. But Verbs in *uo* deriv'd from Nouns of the Fourth Declension, are of the First Conjugation; as, *fluuo* from *flutus*. There are also some in *io* and *ior*, which are of the Third Conjugation; as, *capio, capio, cupio, facio, fodio, fugio, jacio, lacio, mcio, pario, quatio, rapio, sapio, specio, gradior, patior*. Also *potior, orior, and morior* in some Persons, are both of the Third and Fourth Conjugation. But it must be confess'd, that many of these were anciently used in the Fourth Conjugation; So we find *fodire, sapire, cupire, parire, aggredi, progredi*.

(17) And all the Compounds of *eo*, except *ambio*; and *nequeo* the Compound of *quea*.

(18) The *Preterperfect* Tense of the Verbs in *or*, is nothing but the Participle of the *Preterperfect* Tense with the Verb *sum* put to it. The Participle of the *Preterperfect* Tense of all Verbs *Passives*, is formed from the latter *Supine* of the *Active*, by putting *o* to *s*; as, from *amatu* is formed *amatus*. As for the Verbs *Deponents*, that come from no *Actives*, we may fancy a Verb in *o*, and from thence we may form a regular Participle of the *Preterperfect* Tense, except a few that are Irregular, which will be noted hereafter.

CHAP. XXV. Of the way of forming Verbs in O in the Present Tense, and the Tenses that come from thence.

Indicat. Mood. Present Tense Singular.	{ I love or do love, <i>Amo,</i> I warn, <i>Moneo,</i> I read, <i>Lego,</i> I hear, <i>Audio,</i>	{ thou lovest or dost love, <i>amas,</i> thou warnest, <i>moneo,</i> thou readest, <i>legis,</i> thou hearest, <i>audis,</i>	{ he loveth or doth love; <i>amat</i> ; he warneth; <i>moneo</i> ; he readeth; <i>legit</i> ; he heareth; <i>audit</i> ;	{ Plur. We love or do love, <i>Amamus,</i> We warn, <i>Monemus,</i> We read, <i>Legimus,</i> We hear, <i>Audimus,</i>	{ ye love or do love, <i>amatis,</i> ye warn, <i>monetis,</i> ye read, <i>legitis,</i> ye hear, <i>auditis,</i>	{ they love or do love; <i>amant.</i> they warn, <i>monent.</i> they read, <i>legunt.</i> they hear, <i>audiunt.</i> (1)
Preterim- perfect Tense Singular.	{ I loved or did love, <i>Amabam,</i> I warned, <i>Monebam,</i> I read, <i>Legebam,</i> I heard, <i>Audiebam,</i>	{ thou lovedst or didst love, <i>amabas,</i> thou warnedst, <i>monebas,</i> thou readst, <i>legebas,</i> thou hearest, <i>audiebas,</i>	{ he loved or did love; <i>amabat</i> ; he warned; <i>monebat</i> ; he read; <i>legebat</i> ; he heard; <i>audiebat</i> ;	{ Plur. We loved or did love, <i>Amabamus,</i> We warned, <i>Monebamus,</i> We read, <i>Legabamus,</i> We heard, <i>Audiebamus,</i>	{ ye loved or did love, <i>amabatis,</i> ye warned, <i>monebatis,</i> ye read, <i>legebatis,</i> ye heard, <i>audiebatis,</i>	{ they loved or did love, <i>amabant.</i> they warned, <i>monebant.</i> they read, <i>legebant.</i> they heard, <i>audiebant.</i> (2)
Future Tense Singular.	{ I shall or will love, <i>Amabo,</i> I shall or will warn, <i>Monebo,</i> I shall or will read, <i>Legam,</i> I shall or will hear, <i>Audiam,</i>	{ thou shalt or wilt love, <i>amabis,</i> thou shalt or wilt warn, <i>monebis,</i> thou shalt or wilt read, <i>leges,</i> thou shalt or wilt hear, <i>audies,</i>	{ he shall or will love; <i>amabit</i> ; he shall or will warn, <i>monebit</i> ; he shall or will read, <i>leget</i> ; he shall or will hear, <i>audiet</i> ;	{ Plur. We shall or will love, <i>Amabimus,</i> We shall or will warn, <i>Monebimus,</i> We shall or will read, <i>Legemus,</i> We shall or will hear, <i>Audiemus,</i>	{ ye shall or will love, <i>amabitis,</i> ye shall or will warn, <i>monebitis,</i> ye shall or will read, <i>legetis,</i> ye shall or will hear, <i>audietis,</i>	{ they shall or will love, <i>amabunt.</i> they shall or will warn, <i>monebunt.</i> they shall or will read, <i>legent.</i> (3) they shall or will hear, <i>audient.</i> (4)

Verbs

Verbs Passives made from the Actives.

Indicative Mood.	Present Tense Singular.	I am loved, <i>Amor,</i>	thou art loved, <i>amaris</i> Or <i>amare,</i>	he is loved; <i>amatur;</i>	We are loved, <i>Amamur,</i>	ye are loved, <i>amamini,</i>	they are loved. <i>amantur.</i>
		I am warned, <i>Moncor,</i>	thou art warned, <i>moneris</i> Or <i>monere,</i>	he is warned; <i>monetur;</i>	We are warned, <i>Monemur,</i>	ye are warned, <i>monemini,</i>	they are warned. <i>monentur.</i>
		I am read, <i>Legor,</i>	thou art read, <i>legeris</i> Or <i>legere,</i>	he is read; <i>legitur;</i>	We are read, <i>Legimur,</i>	ye are read, <i>legimini,</i>	they are read. <i>leguntur.</i>
		I am heard, <i>Audior,</i>	thou art heard, <i>audiris</i> Or <i>audire,</i>	he is heard; <i>auditur;</i>	We are heard, <i>Audimur,</i>	ye are heard, <i>audimini,</i>	they are heard. <i>audientur.</i>
Preterimperfect Tense Singular.		I was loved, <i>Amabar,</i>	thou wast loved, <i>amabaris</i> Or <i>amabare,</i>	he was loved; <i>amabatur;</i>	We were loved, <i>Amabamur,</i>	ye were loved, <i>amabamini,</i>	they were loved. <i>amabantur.</i>
		I was warned, <i>Monabar,</i>	thou wast warned, <i>monebaris</i> Or <i>monebare,</i>	he was warned; <i>monebatur;</i>	We were warned, <i>Monebamur,</i>	ye were warned, <i>monebamini,</i>	they were warned. <i>monebantur.</i>
		I was read, <i>Legabar,</i>	thou wast read, <i>legebarris</i> Or <i>legebare,</i>	he was read; <i>legebatur;</i>	We were read, <i>Legabamur,</i>	ye were read, <i>legebamini,</i>	they were read. <i>legebantur.</i>
		I was heard, <i>Audiebar,</i>	thou wast heard, <i>audiebaris</i> Or <i>audiebare,</i>	he was heard; <i>audiebatur;</i>	We were heard, <i>Audiebamur,</i>	ye were heard, <i>audiebamini,</i>	they were heard. <i>audiebantur.</i> (s)
Future Tense Singular.		I shall or will be loved, <i>Amabor,</i>	thou shalt or wilt be loved, <i>amaberis</i> Or <i>amabere,</i>	he shall or will be loved; <i>amabitur;</i>	We shall or will be loved, <i>Amabimur,</i>	ye shall or will be loved, <i>amabimini,</i>	they shall or will be loved. <i>amabuntur.</i>
		I shall or will be warned, <i>Monabor,</i>	thou shalt or wilt be warned, <i>monaberis</i> Or <i>monebere,</i>	he shall or will be warned; <i>monebitur;</i>	We shall or will be warned, <i>Monebimur,</i>	ye shall or will be warned, <i>monebimini,</i>	they shall or will be warned. <i>monebuntur.</i>
		I shall or will be read, <i>Legar,</i>	thou shalt or wilt be read, <i>legeris</i> Or <i>legere,</i>	he shall or will be read; <i>legetur;</i>	We shall or will be read, <i>Legemur,</i>	ye shall or will be read, <i>legimini,</i>	they shall or will be read. <i>legentur.</i>
		I shall or will be heard, <i>Audiar,</i>	thou shalt or wilt be heard, <i>audieris</i> Or <i>audiere,</i>	he shall or will be heard; <i>audietur;</i>	We shall or will be heard, <i>Audiemur,</i>	ye shall or will be heard, <i>audiemini,</i>	they shall or will be heard. <i>audientur.</i> (s)

The

The Imperative Mood wants the first Person.

Imperative Mood.

Love thou,
Amā or *amāto*,
Warn thou,
Mone or *moneto*,
Read thou,
Legē or *legito*,
Hear thou,
Audi or *audito*.

let him love;
amato;
let him warn;
moneto;
let him read;
legito;
let him hear;
audito;

Plur.

Love ye,
Amāte or *amātote*,
Warn ye,
Monete or *monetote*,
Read ye,
Legite or *legitote*,
Hear ye,
Audite or *auditate*,

let them love,
*amātū*o. (6)
let them warn,
*monētū*o.
let them read,
*legū*o.
let them hear,
*audiū*o.

Singular.

The Subjunctive Mood signifies diversly; and accordingly hath different Signs put to it; the most usual are *may*, or *can*, to the Present Tense; *might*, *would*, *should*, *ought*, to the Preterimperfect Tense.

Subjunctive Mood.

I love,
Amem,
I warn,
Moneam,
I read,
Legam,
I hear,
Audiam,
I loved or did love,
Amarem,
I warned,
Monerem,
I read,
Legerem,
I heard,
Audirem,

thou lovest,
ames,
thou warn'st,
moneas,
thou read'st,
legas,
thou hear'st,
audias,
thou loved'st,
amares,
thou warn'd'st,
moneres,
thou read'st,
legeres,
thou hear'd'st,
audires,

he loveth;
amet;
he warneth;
moneat;
he readeth;
legat;
he hearth;
audiat;

Plur.

We love,
Amemus,
We warn,
Moneamus,
We read,
Legamus,
We hear,
Audiamus,
We loved,
Amavimus,
We warn'd,
Monuimus,
We read,
Legerimus,
We heard,
Audiremus,

ye love,
ametis,
ye warn,
*moneat*is,
ye read,
legatis,
ye hear,
*audiat*is,

they love,
ament.
they warn,
moncant.
they read,
legant.
they hear,
audiant. (*)

Preterimperfect Tense Singular.

I loved or did love,
Amarem,
I warned,
Monerem,
I read,
Legerem,
I heard,
Audirem,

thou loved'st,
amares,
thou warn'd'st,
moneres,
thou read'st,
legeres,
thou hear'd'st,
audires,

he loved;
amaret;
he warn'd;
moneret;
he read;
legeret;
he heard;
audiret;

Plur.

We loved,
Amavimus,
We warn'd,
Monuimus,
We read,
Legerimus,
We heard,
Audiremus,

ye loved,
amaretis,
ye warn'd,
moneretis,
ye read,
legeretis,
ye heard,
audiretis,

they loved,
amarent.
they warn'd,
monerent.
they read,
legerent.
they heard,
audirent.

Infinit. Mood. Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Amare, to love.
Monere, to warn.

Legere, to read.
Audire, to hear.

Verbs

Verbs. Passives made from the Actives.

Imperative Mood.

Singular.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense Singular.

Preterimperfect Tense Singular.

Infinit. Mood.

Be thou loved, <i>Amare</i> or <i>amator</i> ; Be thou warned, <i>Mondere</i> or <i>monetor</i> ; Be thou read, <i>Legere</i> or <i>legitor</i> ; Be thou heard, <i>Audire</i> or <i>auditor</i> ;	Let him be loved; <i>amator</i> ; Let him be warned; <i>monetor</i> ; Let him be read; <i>legitor</i> ; Let him be heard; <i>auditor</i> ;	Plur.	Be ye loved, <i>Amamini</i> or <i>amaminor</i> ; Be ye warned, <i>Monemini</i> or <i>moneminor</i> ; Be ye read, <i>Legimini</i> or <i>legiminor</i> ; Be ye heard, <i>Audimini</i> or <i>audiminor</i> ;	let them be loved, <i>amantor</i> . (6) let them be warned, <i>monetor</i> . let them be read, <i>leguntor</i> . let them be heard, <i>audiantur</i> .
thou art loved, <i>amaris</i> or <i>amere</i> ; thou art warned, <i>moneris</i> or <i>monere</i> ; thou art read, <i>legaris</i> or <i>legere</i> ; thou art heard, <i>audiaris</i> or <i>audire</i> ;	he is loved; <i>ametur</i> ; he is warned; <i>monetur</i> ; he is read; <i>legatur</i> ; he is heard; <i>audietur</i> ;	Plur.	We are loved, <i>Amamur</i> ; We are warned, <i>Monemur</i> ; We are read, <i>Legamur</i> ; We are heard, <i>Audiamur</i> ;	they are loved, <i>amentur</i> . they are warned, <i>monentur</i> . they are read, <i>legantur</i> . they are heard, <i>audiantur</i> .
thou wast loved, <i>amaberis</i> or <i>amavere</i> ; thou wast warned, <i>moneris</i> or <i>monere</i> ; thou wast read, <i>legeris</i> or <i>legere</i> ; thou wast heard, <i>audieris</i> or <i>audire</i> ;	he was loved; <i>amaretur</i> ; he was warned; <i>moneretur</i> ; he was read; <i>legeretur</i> ; he was heard; <i>audiretur</i> ;	Plur.	We were loved, <i>Amabemur</i> ; We were warned, <i>Moneremur</i> ; We were read, <i>Legeremur</i> ; We were heard, <i>Audiremur</i> ;	they were loved, <i>amarentur</i> . they were warned, <i>monerentur</i> . they were read, <i>legerentur</i> . they were heard, <i>audirentur</i> .
I am loved, <i>Amer</i> ; I am warned, <i>Monear</i> ; I am read, <i>Legar</i> ; I am heard, <i>Audiar</i> ;	I was loved, <i>Amaber</i> ; I was warned, <i>Moner</i> ; I was read, <i>Leger</i> ; I was heard, <i>Audir</i> ;			
I am to be loved. (7)	I am to be warned.			

CHAP. XXVI. Of the way of forming Verbs in o in the Preterperfect Tense, and the Tenses which come from thence.

Indicative Mood.

Preterperfect Tense

Singular.

I have loved, *Amavi*,
I have warned, *Amavisti*,
I have read, *Monui*,
I have heard, *Monuisti*,
Legi,
Legisti,
Audiui,
Audivisti,
thou hast loved,
thou hast warned,
thou hast read,
thou hast heard,
he hath loved,
he hath warned,
he hath read,
he hath heard,
amavit,
amavisti,
monuit,
monuisti,
legit,
legisti,
auduit,
audivisti;

We have loved, *Amavimus*,
We have warned, *Amavistis*,
We have read, *Monuimus*,
We have heard, *Monuistis*,
Legimus,
Legistis,
Audivimus,
Audivistis,
they have loved,
they have warned,
they have read,
they have heard,
amaverunt or *amavere*,
monuerunt or *monuere*,
legerunt or *legere*,
audierunt or *audire*.

Plur.

Preterperfect Tense

Singular.

I had loved, *Amaveram*,
I had warned, *Amaveras*,
I had read, *Monueram*,
I had heard, *Monueras*,
Legeram,
Legeras,
Audiveram,
Audiveras,
thou hadst loved,
thou hadst warned,
thou hadst read,
thou hadst heard,
he had loved,
he had warned,
he had read,
he had heard,
amaverat,
amaveras,
monuerat,
monueras,
legerat,
legeras,
audiverat,
audiveras;

We had loved, *Amaveramus*,
We had warned, *Amaveratis*,
We had read, *Monueramus*,
We had heard, *Monueratis*,
Legeramus,
Legeratis,
Audiveramus,
Audiveratis,
they had loved, I
amaverant,
they had warned,
they had read,
they had heard,
monuerant,
legerant,
they had heard,
audiverant.

Plur.

Subjunctive

Mood.

Preterperfect Tense

Singular.

I have loved, *Amaverim*,
I have warned, *Amaveris*,
I have read, *Monuerim*,
I have heard, *Monueris*,
Legerim,
Legeris,
Audiverim,
Audiveris,
thou hast loved,
thou hast warned,
thou hast read,
thou hast heard,
he hath loved,
he hath warned,
he hath read,
he hath heard,
amaverit,
amaveris,
monuerit,
monueris,
legerit,
legeris,
audiverit,
audiveris;

We have loved, *Amaverimus*,
We have warned, *Amaveritis*,
We have read, *Monuerimus*,
We have heard, *Monueritis*,
Legerimus,
Legeritis,
Audiverimus,
Audiveritis,
they have loved, I
amaverint,
they have warned,
they have read,
they have heard,
monuerint,
legerint,
they have heard,
audiverint.

Plur.

Preter.

(9)

Preterpluperfect Tense Singular.

I had loved,
Amavissem,
I had warned,
Monuisssem,
I had read,
Legissem,
I had heard,
Audivissem,

thou hadst loved,
amavisset;
thou hadst warned,
monuisset;
thou hadst read,
legisset;
thou hadst heard,
audivisset;

We had loved,
Amavissemus,
We had warned,
Monuisssemus,
We had read,
Legissemus,
We had heard,
Audivissemus,

ye had loved,
amavissetis,
ye had warned,
monuissetis,
ye had read,
legissetis,
ye had heard,
audivissetis,

they had loved,
amavisissent.
they had warned,
monuissent.
they had read,
legissent.
they had heard,
audivissent.

Future Tense Singular.

I shall or will love,
Amavero,
I shall or will warn,
Monuero,
I shall or will read,
Legero,
I shall or will hear,
Audivero,

he shall or will love,
amaverit;
he shall or will warn,
monuerit;
he shall or will read,
legerit;
he shall or will hear,
audiverit;

We shall or will love,
Amavertimus,
We shall or will warn,
Monuerimus,
We shall or will read,
Legerimus,
We shall or will hear,
Audivertimus,

ye shall or will love,
amavertitis,
ye shall or will warn,
monuertitis,
ye shall or will read,
legeritis,
ye shall or will hear,
audivertitis,

they shall or will love,
amavertint.
they shall or will warn,
monuertint.
they shall or will read,
legerint.
they shall or will hear,
audivertint.

Infinitive Mood.

Amavisse, to have or had loved.
Monuisse, to have or had warned.
Legisse, to have or had read.
Audivisse, to have or had heard.

The Future Tense of the *Infinitive Mood* of Verbs in *o*, is made up of the Participle of the Future in *rus*, and the Verb *esse*; thus: (10)

Amaturum esse, to love hereafter.
Monitutum esse, to warn hereafter.
Lecturum esse, to read hereafter.
Auditurum esse, to hear hereafter.

Verbs in *or* have properly no Preterperfect Tense; but when we would express them in the Preterperfect Tense, we use the Participle of the Preterperfect Tense, and the Verb *sum*.

Notes

Notes on CHAP. XXV and XXVI.

(1) **E**o and *queo*, with their Compounds, make *eunt*; except *ambio*, which is every where declin'd like *audio*.

(2) *Eo* and *queo*, with their Compounds, make *ibam* and *quibam*. And indeed any Verb of old of the Fourth Conjugation made *ibam* in the Preterimperfect Tense: *Scapula gestibant mihi*, Plau. *Prælagibat mihi animus*, Id. *Lenibat dictis animum*, Virg. *Primagenas vestibat flore juvenis*, Id.

(3) The Future of the Third Conjugation of old ended in *em*; as, *legem, faciem*; So *Vossius* out of *Quintilian*. Yea, it seems that some Verbs of this Conjugation of old made the Future in *bo*; *Ruri reddibo te*, Pl. *Opera reddibitur tibi*, Id.

(4) *Eo* and *queo*, and their Compounds, make the Future in *ibo*; yet sometimes we read the Future Tense *incam, inies, iniet*; *præscram, præteriet, præteriet*; *transcam, transies, transiet*: *At si tardus eris, errabis, transiet atas*, Tibul. Yea, any Verb of the Fourth Conjugation seems of old to be able to make its Future in *ibo*: So we read *Matris servibo commodis*, Ter. *Nemo ex me scibit*, Id. *Mollibit aversos penates*, Hor.

(5) The Preterimperfect and Future of Verbs in *or*, of old ended in *ibar* and *ibor*; *Hic ego virum interea opperibor*, Ter. *vid. Fig. 2.*

(6) The Imperative Mood can no more have a first Person Plural, than a Singular: Instead of them therefore, we use the first Persons of the Potential Mood; *amem, may I love*; *amemus, may we love, or let us love*: So also in the Passive Voice. The Third Persons of the Potential Mood also, *amet* and *ament*, are more frequently used in an Imperative or Permissive Sense, than *amato* or *amanto*; for indeed these are seldom used (unless by the Poets) except it be when Laws are Enacted; as, *Ad divos adeunto castè, pietatem colunto. Iusta imperia sumo; cives iustis imperiis modèstè parento*, Cic.

But the Poets use these words more licentiously. So also *ametur* and *amentur* of the Potential Mood in Verbs in *or*, are used for the Imperatives more frequently than *amator, amantor*. *Amaminor* is seldom used.

(*) But *eo* and *queo*, and their Compounds, make *eam* and *quam*.

(7) By

(7) By a Figure call'd *Paragoge*, the Syllable *ev* is usually added by the Poets, to the *Infinitive Mood* of Verbs in *or*; as, *dicier* for *diri*, *Perf.*

(8) Verbs of the First and Fourth Conjugation usually suffer a *Syncope* (or loss of a Letter or two in the middle) in the Second Person Singular, and in the Second and Third Person Plural; as for *amavisti*, *amavistis*, *amavêrunt*; *audivisti*, *audivistis*, *audivêrunt*; it is common to say, *amâsti*, *amâstis*, *amârunt*; *audiisti*, *audiistis*, *audiêrunt*. Some Verbs of the Third Conjugation, whose Preterperfect Tense ends in *ivi*, are thus us'd also; as, for *petivisti*, *petivistis*, *petivêrunt*, or *petivêre*, are most frequently us'd *petiisti*, *petiistis*, *petiêrunt*, or *petiêre*. And in all Tenses formed from the Preterperfect Tense, these Verbs of the First and Fourth Conjugation are commonly contracted by a *Syncope*: As, instead of *amaveram*, *amaverim*, *amavissim*, *amavero*, *amavisse*; it is common to say, *amâram*, *amârim*, *amâssim*, *amâro*, *amâsse*; and, instead of *audiveram*, *audiverim*, *audivissim*, *audivero*, *audivisse*; to say, *audieram*, *audierim*, *audissim*, *audiero*, *audisse*; and so in all the Persons of all these Tenses. The Compounds of *eo* are most commonly express'd with a *Syncope*; *perco*, and *intereo* always, *Voss.* The Poets take liberty of *Syncopating* many other Verbs besides these: So we read amongst them, *Extinxi*, *submâsse*, *cupit*, *produx*, *abstraxe*, *divisse*, *crepsimus*, &c. for *extinxisti*, *submovisses*, *cupivisti*, *produxisse*, *abstraxisse*, *divisisse*, *crepsissimus*; *implerunt* and *nôrunt*, for *impleverunt* and *noverunt*, &c.

(9) *Amaverimus*, and *amaveritis*, have *ri* short in the Preterperfect Tense; but they have the same Syllable long in the Future; except amongst the Poets, who use it long or short at pleasure.

(10) Not only *esse*, but *fore*, and sometimes *fuisse*, are join'd with this Participle to make up a Future Tense of the *Infinitive Mood*: *Deinde addit, te ad me fore venturum*, Cic. *Libens faturos fore*, Liv. This is not much to be wondered at; for sometimes we find two Futures put together in the *Indicative Mood*; *De quibus erimus dicturi*, Cic. vid. Cap. 24. (7) *Dico illum hac venditurum non fuisse*, Cic. *An tu censeres ullam animum tam delirantem fuisse?* Id. But note, That *fuisse* with a Participle in *rus*, denotes a *futurum exactum*; but *esse* denotes a simple Future, or a *futurum infectum*, vid. Cap. 24. (1) If we would make an *Infinitive Future* of any Verb that wants the Participle in *rus*, we must use *fore*, or *futurum* instead of it; thus, *Spero fore ut contingat id nobis*, Cic.

They sometimes speak after this manner in Verbs that have the Participle in *rus*. This Future of the *Infinitive* Mood was anciently us'd in either Number, or any Gender; as, *Credo ego inimicos meos hoc dicturum*, Gracchus. *Non putavi hoc eam facturum*, Laber. But this is reckon'd an Archaism; though Gellius says, That Cicero spoke thus. Some add *amatum ire* for a Future Tense; but that rather signifies the Present Time. Neither may that Circumlocution be us'd, but when we may use the like in the Present Tense of the *Indicative* Mood; as we may say *perditum ire*, because we may say *perditum eo*; but we may not say *intellectum ire*, because we never say *intellectum eo*, Voss.

Of old the Preterperfect Tense of the *Subjunctive* Mood ended in *im*, the Future in *so* or *xo*, and the *Infinitive* Future in *ssere*: Thus we read, *Ausim, faxim, duim, perduim, comedim, irritasso, prohibesso, occæpso, amasso, faxo, adaxo, injexo, impetrassere, expugnassere*, for *ausus sim, fecerim, dederim, perdiderim, comederim, irritavero, prohibuero, occæpero, amavero, fecero, adegero, injecero, impetraturum esse, expugnaturum esse*. Plautus uses *faxem* for *fecissem*, and *danunt* for *dant*. *Ausim, faxim*, and *faxo*, are still in use,

C H A P. XXVII.

Of the Verb *sum*, and the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in *or*.

<i>Indicat.</i>	I am,	thou art,	he is ;	We are,	ye are,	they are.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>Sum,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>est ;</i>	Pl. <i>Sumus,</i>	<i>estis,</i>	<i>sunt. (1)</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	I was,	thou wast,	he was ;	We were,	ye were,	they were.
	<i>Eram,</i>	<i>eras,</i>	<i>erat ;</i>	Pl. <i>Eramus,</i>	<i>eratis,</i>	<i>erant.</i>
<i>Preterperf.</i>	I have been,	thou hast been,	he hath been ;	We have been,	ye have been,	they have been.
	<i>Fui,</i>	<i>fuiſti,</i>	<i>fuit ;</i>	Pl. <i>Fuimus,</i>	<i>fuiſtis,</i>	<i>fuêrunt-êrê.</i>
<i>Preterplup.</i>	I had been,	thou hadſt been,	he had been ;	We had been,	ye had been,	they ad been.
	<i>Fueram,</i>	<i>fueras,</i>	<i>fuerat ;</i>	Pl. <i>Fueramus,</i>	<i>fueratis,</i>	<i>fuerant.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	I ſhall or will be,	thou ſhalt or wilt be,	he ſhall or will be ;	We ſhall or will be,	ye ſhall or will be,	they ſhall or will be.
	<i>Ero,</i>	<i>eris,</i>	<i>erit ;</i>	Pl. <i>Erimus,</i>	<i>eritis,</i>	<i>erunt.</i>
<i>Imperat.</i>		Be thou,	be he ;		Be ye,	be they.
		{ <i>Es,</i>	<i>eſto ;</i>	Pl.	{ <i>Eſte,</i>	<i>ſunto.</i>
		<i>Eſto,</i>			<i>Eſtote,</i>	
<i>Subjunct.</i>	I am,	thou art,	he is ;	We are,	ye are,	they are.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>Sim,</i>	<i>ſis,</i>	<i>ſit ;</i>	Pl. <i>Simus,</i>	<i>ſitis,</i>	<i>ſint. (2)</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	I was,	thou waſt,	he was ;	We were,	ye were,	they were.
	<i>Esſem,</i>	<i>eſſes,</i>	<i>eſſet ;</i>	Pl. <i>Esſemus,</i>	<i>eſſetis,</i>	<i>eſſent. (3)</i>
<i>Preterperf.</i>	I have been,	thou haſt been,	he hath been ;	We have been,	ye have been,	they have been.
	<i>Fuerim,</i>	<i>fueris,</i>	<i>fuerit ;</i>	Pl. <i>Fuerimus,</i>	<i>fueritis,</i>	<i>fuerint.</i>
<i>Preterplup.</i>	I had been,	thou hadſt been,	he had been ;	We had been,	ye had been,	they had been.
	<i>Fuiſſem,</i>	<i>fuiſſes,</i>	<i>fuiſſet ;</i>	Pl. <i>Fuiſſemus,</i>	<i>fuiſſetis,</i>	<i>fuiſſent.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	I ſhall or will be,	thou ſhalt or wilt be,	he ſhall or will be ;	We ſhall or will be,	ye ſhall or will be,	they ſhall or will be.
	<i>Fuero,</i>	<i>fueris,</i>	<i>fuerit ;</i>	Pl. <i>Fuerimus,</i>	<i>fueritis,</i>	<i>fuerint.</i>
<i>Infinitive.</i>						
<i>Present and Imperfect.</i>			To be.			
			<i>Esſe.</i>			
<i>Preterper. & Preterplup.</i>			To have or had been.			
			<i>Fuiſſe.</i>			
<i>Future.</i>			To be hereafter.			
			<i>Fore, (4)</i>		<i>or Futurum eſſe.</i>	

Thus are all the Compounds of *sum* vary'd; only *prosum* takes in the Letter *d*, whenever a Vowel should follow *pro*; as *prodes*, *prodest*, *prodessem*, *prodesse*. *Sum* and h.s Compounds want Gerunds and Supines.

Verbs in *or* have properly no Preterperfect Tense, nor Tenses deriv'd from it: But all these Tenses are supply'd by the several Tenses of the Verb *sum*, and the Participles put together. As,

Amatus sum or *fui*, I have been loved; *amatus es* or *fuisti*, thou hast been loved; *amatus est* or *fuit*, he hath been loved: Plur. *Amati sumus* or *fuimus*, we have been loved; *amati estis* or *fuistis*, ye have been loved; *amati sunt*, or *fuērunt* or *fuere*, they have been loved. (5) *Amatus eram* or *fuera*, I had been loved, &c. *Amatus sim* or *fuierim*, I have been loved; *Amatus essem* or *fuisssem*, I had been loved; *Amatus ero* or *fuero*, I shall or will be loved.

So in all other Conjugations; as, *Monitus sum* or *fui*, I have been warned; *Lectus sum* or *fui*, I have been read; *Auditus sum* or *fui*, I have been heard. And so in the rest of the Tenses.

In like manner may the Participle of the Future in *rus*, or the Future in *dus*, be put to the Verb *sum*; as, *Amaturus sum* or *fui*; *Amandus sum* or *fui*.

The Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense of the Infinitive Mood of the Verb Passive, is made of the Participle of the Preterperfect Tense, and the Verb *esse* or *fuisse*; as, *Amatum esse* or *fuisse*, to have or had been loved; *Monitum esse*, *lectum esse*, *auditum esse*.

The Future Tense of the Infinitive Mood Passive, is made of the First Supine, and the Verb *iri*, or of the Participle in *dus*, and the Verb *esse*; as, *Amatum iri*, or *amandum esse*, to be loved hereafter. (6)

The

The Verb Deponent is in like manner express'd in these Tenses, by a Participle, and the Verb *sum* or *fui*; as of *Miror*, I wonder; *miratus sum* or *fui*, I have wondred, &c. (7)

The Verbs Deponents form their Supines like Verbs in *o* of their own Conjugation; as, *Miror*, *miratum*; whence comes *miratus sum* or *fui*; *vereor*, *veritum*, *veritus sum* or *fui*; *fungor*, *functum*, *functus sum* or *fui*; *molior*, *molitum*, *molitus sum* or *fui*. (8)

In Verbs Deponents, *sum* and *fui* are of the same Tense; as, *Miratus sum*, and *miratus fui*, both signifie, I have wondred. Not so in Passives. (9)

Notes on CHAP. XXVII.

(1) **T**HE formation of the Verb *sum*, seems to be made up of two old Verbs, *esum*, and *fuo* (à *εὖω*): From *esum* are made *es*, *est*, *sumus*, *estis*, *sunt*, *eram*, *era*, *essem*, *esse*: From *fuo*, *fu*, *eram*, and the rest that begin with *fu*. The Antients said, *Esum*; *es*, *est*; *esumus*, *estis esunt*, Varro de Analogiâ. So we read, *Discordia civium esunto ne amplius sex menses*, Cic. *Fuo* occurs often; as, *Quod aliis cibus est, aliis fuit acre venenum*, Lucret. *Fors fuit pol*, Ter. *Tros Rutilusve fuit nullo discrimine agetur*, Virg. The old Participle was *ens*: whence remain *presens*, *absens*, *potens*; but not worthy to be call'd Participles, especially not the last.

(2) *Sim*, *sis*, *sit*, &c. are a Contraction of *siem*; *Senties qui vir siem*, Ter.

(3) Instead of *essem*, is sometimes us'd *forem*, *fores*, *foret*, Plu. *forent*, syncopated of *fuerm*, from *fuo*.

(4) *Fore* is syncopated of *fuere*, of the old Verb *fuo*.

(5) Grammarians use to call *amatus sum*, and *amatus eram*, *Præterita propinquiora*; as if they signify'd the Time lately past: and they call *amatus fui*, and *amatus fueram*, *Præterita remotiora*, as if they signify'd a thing done long before. But Authors seldom observe this difference: *Horum pater abhinc duos & viginti annos mortuus est*, Cic. *Platonem in maximis periculis insidiisque versatum esse accepimus*, Id. Danes. And yet there seems sometimes

to be a necessity of distinguishing them in Verbs Passives ; as we would say, *Vienna obsessa fuit, non obsessa est* : Although by an *E-terosiss*, the one is often us'd for the other, *Rhen*.

(6) To which may be added, *amatum fore* ; which denotes the *futurum exactum* or *perfectum*. *Amandum esse* is vary'd in Number and Gender ; for we say, *amandam* or *amandos, das, da esse*, as well as *amandum esse*. And indeed, this rather denotes Necessity or Duty, than Futurity. *Amatum iri* is the most proper Future of the *Infinitive* Mood Passive ; it is made of the Supine, and the Verb *iri*, and is not vary'd in Number or Gender, as the other are : It is unalterably *amatum iri* in both Numbers, and in all Genders ; as, *Audierat non datum iri filio uxorem suo*, Ter. *Rumor venit datum iri gladiatores*. Id. *Has tibi redditum iri putabam prius*, C. c.

(7) Deponents do every where follow the Formation of the Passives, except in the Future Tense of the *Infinitive* Mood ; and there they imitate the Actives ; as we say, *miraturum, ram, ros, ras esse*, from *miror*.

(8) There are no Exceptions in the First Conjugation. In the Second are excepted, *Fateor, fassum, confiteor, profiteor, diffiteor, fessum* ; *liceor licitum*, to cheapen ; *polliceor pollicitum* ; *medeor* wants the Supine, except we borrow *medicatum* ; *miseror misertum, reor ratum* ; *tueor* and *intueor*, and *contueor tuium*. *Tutus* is a Noun. In the Third are excepted, *Labor lapsum, apiscor aptum, adipiscor indeptum, indipiscor indeptum, comminiscor commentum* ; *desitiscor* wants the Supine ; (*defessus* is a Noun) ; *expergiscor expervectum, irascor iratum, nanciscor natum, nascor natum, obliviscor oblitum, pascor pastum*, (us'd sometimes Passively ;) *paciscor patum, proficiscor profectum* ; *reminiscor* and *vescor* want, but borrow of *recordor* and *pascor* ; *ulciscor ultum* ; *liquor* and *ringor* want ; *loquor locutum, sequor secutum, queror questum, nitor nisum* or *nixum, amplector amplexum, divortor, praevortor, revertor, versum* ; *utor usum* ; *calvor* wants ; *gradior gressum*, and his Compounds ; *fruo fruitum* (but *perfruo perfruitum* and *perfructum* ;) *morior* wants the Supine, but makes *mortuus* and *moriturus* (*quasi à moritum*) in the Participles ; *orior ortum, patior passum* ; *tuor* an old Verb, for which we now use *tueor, tuium*. In the Fourth Conjugation are excepted, *Assentior assensum, comperior* and *opperior pertum, experior expertum, metior mensum* (rarely *metium*,) *ordior orsum* (to begin.)

(9) See above, Fig. (5.)

C H A P. XXVIII.

*Of the Species and Figure of Verbs ; and
some Rules about the forming of them.*

AS to their *Species*, Verbs are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*. *Derivatives* are deriv'd mostly from Verbs, or Nouns. Those deriv'd from Verbs, are of four sorts ; *Inchoatives*, as *labasco* ; *Frequentatives*, as *scriptito, verso, nexo, minitor* ; *Desideratives*, as *parturio* ; *Deminutives*, as *cantillo* (1). Those deriv'd from Nouns, are call'd *Nominals* or *Denominatives*, as *hymo* (2), *patrizzo* (3). Some few are deriv'd of Adverbs and Prepositions, as *satio, supero*, of *satis* and *super*.

As to their *Figure*, Verbs are either *Simple* or *Compound*.

Verbs are compounded either with another *Verb*, as *calefacio* ; or with a *Noun*, as *edifico, multiplico* ; or with an *Adverb*, as *benedico* ; or with a *Preposition*, as *addo, conjicio*. (*)

There are many *Compounds*, whose *Simples* are out of use. (4)

Some *Latin* Verbs come from *Greek* Verbs. (5)

Verbs in *o* generally have *Gerunds* and *Supines*, and two *Participles* ; one of the *Present Tense*, another of the *Future* in *rus*.

Verbs *Deponents* generally have *Gerunds* and *Supines*, and four *Participles*, if they signify *Actively* ; three, if they signify *Neutrally* ; for then they want the *Future* in *rus*.

Verbs Passives have no *Gerunds* nor *Supines*, and but two Participles ; one of the Perfect Tense, another of the Future in *das*.

The principal Things to be regarded, are, the Present Tense, the Preterperfect Tense, and Supine : From these Three, all the Tenses are formed in all the Moods.

Those Verbs in *o* that want the Preterperfect Tense, want also the Supine ; and those that want the Supine, want also the Future Tense of the *Infinitive*, and the Preterperfect Tense Passive.

If a Verb double a Letter or two of the Present Tense in the Preterperfect Tense, it does not double the same in the Supine, nor ordinarily in the Preterperfect Tense of its Compounds ; as *mordeo, momordi, morsum* ; *premordeo, premordi, premorsum*. (6)

Compounds usually keep the Conjugation of the Simples. (7)

Most Supines keep the Vowel of the Present Tense ; as, *aro, egi, actum* ; *lino, levi, litum*. But many Compounds do not. (8)

Notes on CHAP. XXVIII.

(1) **I** *Nchoatives* end in *sco* or *scor*, and denote the *Beginning* of a thing ; as, *labasco*, to begin to decay ; *bisco* qu. *biasco* of *bio*, to gape ; *fruscor*, to enjoy : *Augmentation* ; as, *Ardescitq; tuendo*, Virg. *Egrescitq; medendo*, Id. And in this Sense, *incipio* is sometimes set before them ; as, *Maurescere frumenta incipiebant*, Cæf. Or *Continuation* ; as, *Edormiscam hoc villi*, i. e. *dormiendo exhalet*. The *e* are all of the Third Conjugation ; they always signify Neutrally ; and are often us'd instead of their Primitives. But there are also many Verbs ending in *sco*, that are not *Inchoatives* (however they may also seem to come from Verbs) because they

they have a proper Preterperfect Tense of their own ; such as, *Cresco, pascō, discō, fuescō, &c.* — *Frequentatives* end in *to, so, xo, or xor* ; and denote Frequency or Repetition ; as, *scriptito, to write often, &c.* Sometimes two *Frequentatives* come from the same Verb ; as, *jaſto* and *jaſtito* from *jacio*, *canto* and *cantito* from *cano*, *diſto* and *diſtito* from *dico*, *viſo* and *viſito* from *video*, &c. But the former of all these are *Frequentatives* rather in Termination than Signification : And there are many more, which have the Termination of *Frequentatives*, but not the Signification ; as, *tracto, cogito, arceſſo, cappeſſo dormito, capro, vendito, munito* ; which rather ſignifie to deſire to do a thing, than to do it often. *Frequentatives* alſo are often uſ'd inſtead of their Primitives : They are all of the Firſt Conjugation ; except *viſo*, which is of the Third. — *Deſideratives* or *Meditatives* end in *rio*, and note a Deſire or Endeavour to do a thing ; as, *lecturio, I deſire to read* ; *cenaturio, I deſire to ſup* ; *parturio, I am about to bring forth.* Thoſe Verbs that end in *urio*, and come from Primitives that want the Supines, are not *Deſideratives* in Signification ; as, *ſcalpurio* : Much leſs are *ligurio, ſcaturio*, which neither ſignifie any Deſire, nor are formed from any Supine, nor have u ſhort before *rio*. Sometimes *Deſideratives* are formed from Nouns ; as, *Illa ſyllaturis animus ejus, Cic.* Theſe are all of the Fourth Conjugation. — Some *Diminutives* ſometimes loſe their diminutive Signification ; as, *refocillo*. *Pitiſſo* ſeems a Diminutive, in *Terence*, *to ſip*, or *drink a little.*

(2) So *machinor* of *machina*, &c. In as much as ſome Nouns are deriv'd of Verbs, and ſome Verbs are deriv'd of Nouns ; it may be demanded, how it may be known, whether the Noun come from the Verb, or the Verb from the Noun ? To which it is answer'd, That that word is juſtly accounted Primitive, which is firſt by Nature. Hence we may know, that the Verb *armo* is deriv'd from the Noun *arma* ; becauſe Arms muſt be, before Men can arm themſelves with them : On the other hand, we may know, that the Noun *lector* is deriv'd from the Verb *legere* ; becauſe a Man muſt firſt *legere*, before he can be ſaid to be *lector*. And therefore *armo* is ſaid to be *verbum nominale* ; and *lector*, *nomen verbale*, Danel.

(3) Theſe *Nominals* are commonly call'd *Imitatives*, becauſe they denote Imitation. They come from Greek Verbs in *ίζω*, and are all of the Firſt Conjugation. Inſtead of theſe, the *Latins* rather make uſe of Verbs in *or* ; as, *Græcor, poetor, cornicor, vulpinor, Bacchor, &c.*

(*) But it muſt here be noted, That many Verbs in Compoſition ſuffer conſiderable Alteration : Sometimes the Compounds change

change the *Kind* of their *Simples* ; as, *sacro* and *sentio* are *Actives* ; *execror* and *assentior*, *Deponents* : Sometimes they change the *Conjugation* ; as, *dare*, *addere*, *reddere*, &c. except *circundo*, *venundo*, *pellundo*, *satisdo* ; and the *Compounds* of *facio*, that end in *fico* or *ficor* ; as, *latifico*, *sanctifico*, *sacrifico*, *ludifico*, *gratifico*, *velifico* ; all of the *First Conjugation*. To which may be added, *comperio*, *reperio*, &c. *Compounds* of *pario*, and yet of the *Fourth Conjugation* ; if indeed they be *Compounds* of *pario*. Sometimes they change both ; especially the *Compounds* of *fero*, *gero*, *sedeo*, *specio*, *sperno* and *sterno* ; as, *vociferor*, *belligero*, *morigeror*, *insidior*, *conspicor*, *suspicio*, *externo*, *consternor*. Sometimes the *Compound* changes only a *Vowel* ; of which hereafter.

(4) Such are *Accendo*, *incendo*, *succendo*, of *cando* ; *antecello*, *excello*, &c. of *cello* ; *defendo*, *offendo*, of *fendo* ; *affligo*, *confligo*, *infligo* of the *Third*, and *profligo* of the *First*, of *fligo* ; *allicio*, &c. of *lacio* ; *deleo*, of *leo* ; *expedio*, *impedio*, of *pedio* ; *compleo*, &c. of *pleo* ; *aspicio*, &c. of *specio* ; *instigo*, of *stigo* ; *irrito*, *prorito*, of *rito* ; *renideo*, of *nideo* ; *conniveo*, of *niveo* : Yea, some are supposed to come from *Nouns* ; as *pernocto*, from *nox* ; *accuso*, &c. from *causa* ; *erudio*, from *rudis* ; *præfoco*, *suffoco*, from *focus* ; *præfoco*, *suffoco*, from *fauces*.

(5) Such are *imbuo*, of *ἰμβύω* ; *induo*, of *ἰνδύω* ; *exuo*, of *ἐκδύω*, &c.

(6) But the *Compounds* of *Do*, *disco*, *sto*, *posco*, do all double the same *Syllable* as the *Simple Verbs* do ; and so do some of the *Compounds* of *curro*, *pungo*, and *tondeo* : So we sometimes read *decucurri*, *excucurri*, *præcucurri*, *procucurri*, *concucurri*, *repupigi*, *detotondi*, &c.

(7) But not always. *Vid. (*) supra*.

(8) Many *Compound Verbs* change the *Vowel* of their *Simple* in the *Supine*, as we shall see hereafter.

C H A P. XXIX.

Of the Preterperfect Tense, and Supines of Simple Verbs in o of the First Conjugation.

Verbs of the First Conjugation make their Preterperfect Tense in *avi*, and their Supine in *atum*; as *Amo*, *amavi*, *amatum*, to love: Except these Fifteen following.

Crepo, *crepui*, *crepitum*; to give a crack.

Cubo, *cubui*, *cubitum*; to lie down.

Domo, *domui*, *domitum*; to tame.

Frico, *fricui*, *frictum*; to rub.

Juvo, *juvi*, *jutum*; to help. (1)

Mico, *micui*, *micatum*; to shine. (2)

Lavo, *lavi*, *lotum*, *lautum*, or *lavatum*; to wash. (3)

Neco, *neui*, *nectum*; more usually, *necavi*, *necatum*; to kill.

Plico, *plicui*, *plicitum*; or *plicavi*, *plicatum*; to fold. (4)

Seco, *secui*, *sectum*; to cut.

Sono, *sonui*, *sonitum*; to sound.

Tono, *tonui*, *tonitum*; to thunder.

Veto, *vetui*, *vetitum*; to forbid.

Do, *dedi*, *datum*; to give.

Sto, *steti*, *statum*; to stand.

Yet all these Verbs antiently made their Preterperfect Tense in *avi*, and their Supine in *atum*; (5) except *do* and *sto*. (6)

There are two Verbs of this Conjugation, *nexo* and *labo*, that want the Preterperfect Tense, and consequently the Supine.

Damno,

Damno, lacto, sacro, tracto, patro in their Compounds change *a* into *e*; as *Condemno, delecto, consecro, detrecto, perpetro, &c.* (7)

The Compounds of *calco* and *salto* change *a* into *u*; as, *inculco, insulto, &c.*

Two Compounds of *juro, dejero* and *pejero*, change *u* into *e*. (8)

Notes on CHAP. XXIX.

(1) **T**He Simple Supine *jutum*, is seldom read; but the Compound *adjutum*, is usual.

(2) *Rhenius* says *micatum*: And indeed, we read *emicaturus*, *Sen.* But then it seems to come from *micavi*, now out of use, not from *micui*.

(3) *Lavstum* seems to be the Supine of *lavo*, of the First Conjugation; and *lautum* (and from thence *loutum*) seem to be the Supine of *lavo, lavi, lavitum*, of the Third.

(4) The Simples, *necui, nectum*, and *plicui, plicitum*, are very rare; the Compounds make *ui*, and *avi* both.

(5) So we find *discrepavi, cubasse*, *Propert.* *domaverunt*, *Plin.* *refricaturus*, *Cic.* *juvaturus*, *Salust.* *micaverit*, *Solin.* *lavatum* of *lavavi*; *necavi* more usually than *necui*; *supplicavi* from *plicavi*; *secaturus*, *Colum.* *sonaturum*, *Hor.* *intonata*, *Id.* *vetavi*, *Perf.*

(6) Yet we read *præstavi*, *Justin.* *Institut.* and *restavi*, *Propert.* And indeed, these new Preterperfect Tenses seem to remain from old Verbs of the Third Conjugation; as we read, *Phæbe, qui Xantho lavis amne crines*, *Hor.* *Lavere jussit nos*, *Plaut.* *Ut valide tonitruum*, *Id.* *Caligare oculos, sonare aures, succidere artus*, *Lucret.*

(7) *Ablatto* always keeps *a*: We read also, *retracto* and *pertracto*. But besides these five usual Verbs, the Compounds also of *jecto, capto, capto, canto*, do change *a* into *e*; as, *dejecto, ejecto, injecto, rejecto*, of *jecto*; *accepto, recepto*, of *capto*; *incepto, excepto*, of *capto*; *occenno, of canto*. From *halo*, *anelo* changes *a*; but *exhalo* keeps it: From *mando, commendo* and *emendo* change it; but *amando* and *premando* keep it.

(8) The rest of the Compounds of *juro* keep *u*; as, *conjuro. Abluo, colluo, diluo, eluo*, are Compounds of the old Verb *luo* (from *λυω*, or *λυέω*) and not from *lavo*.

C H A P. XXX.

Of the Preterperfect Tense, and Supine of Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the Second Conjugation make their Preterperfect Tense in *ui*, and their Supine in *itum*; as *monco*, *monui*, *monitum*: Except these Seven and thirty following, ending in

- Beo. *Jubeo*, *jussi*, *jussum*; to command.
Sorbeo, *sorbui*, *sorptum*; to sup. (1)
- Ceo. *Docco*, *docui*, *doctum*; to teach.
Misceo, *miscui*, *mistum* and *mixtum*; to mingle.
Mulceo, *mulsi*, *mulsum*; to assuage. (2)
- Dco. *Ardeo*, *arsi*, *arsum*; to burn, either Actively or Neutrally.
Mordeo, *momordi*, *morsum*; to bite.
Pendeo, *pependi*, *pensum*; to hang. (3)
Prandeo, *prandi*, *pransum*; to dine.
Rideo, *risi*, *risum*; to laugh.
Suadeo, *suasi*, *suasum*; to advise.
Sedeo, *sed*, *sessum*; to sit.
Spondeo, *spopondi*, *sponsum*; to betroth.
Tondeo, *tonondi*, *tonsum*; to clip or shear.
Video, *vidi*, *visum*; to see.
- Goo. *Augeo*, *auxi*, *auctum*; to encrease.
Indulgeo, *indulsi*, *indultum*; to indulge.
Lugeo, *luxi*, *luctum*; to lament.
Mulgeo, *mulsi* or *mulxi*, *mulsum* or *mulctum*; to milk. (4)
- Tergeo, *terfi*, *tersum*; to wipe.
- Leo. *Deleo*, *deleui*, *deletum*; to blot out: Of the old Verb *leo* (*) *Fleo*,

Fleo, flevi, fletum ; to weep.

Neo, nevi, netum ; to spin.

Impleo, implevi, impletum ; to fill : and the other Compounds.

Nco. *Maneo, mansi, mansum* ; to tarry. (5)

Teneo, tenui, tentum ; to hold.

Queo. *Torqueo, torxi, tortum* ; to wrest.

Rco. *Hareo, hessi, hessum* ; to stick.

Torreo, torrui, tostum ; to roast.

Seo. *Censeo, censi, censum* ; to think. (6)

Veo. *Caveo, cavi, cautum* ; to beware. (7)

Faveo, favi, faustum ; to favour.

Foveo, fovi, fotum ; to cherish.

Moveo, movi, motum ; to move.

Voveo, vovi, votum ; to devote. (8)

leo. *Cicco, civi, citum* ; to stir up, or call upon. (9)

Fico, vievi, vietum ; to bind.

There are three Verbs of this Conjugation, that make their Preterperfect Tense like Passive Verbs ; viz. *Audeo, ausus sum*, to dare ; *Gaudeo, gavisus sum*, to rejoice ; *Soleo, solitus sum*, to be wont. (10)

Most Verbs Neuters of this Conjugation, that make their Preterperfect Tense in *ui*, want their Supines. (11) And two Actives ; *Arceo, arceui*, to drive away ; and *Timeo, timui*, to fear.

Besides these, there are many other Verbs of this Conjugation, that want the Supine. (12)

Some want the Preterperfect Tense, and Supine both ; such are *Aveo, ceveo, clueo, denseo, flaveo, glabreo, hebeo, liveo, moreo, polleo, renideo*.

Egeo, lateo, taceo, teneo, in their Compounds, change their first Vowel into *i* ; as *indigeo, diliteo, conticeo, contineo* : And so *habeo*, and *sedeo* ; except in *postha-*
beo,

beo, *circumsedeo*, and *supersedeo* : And so also *placeo*, in its Compound *displaceo*. But *arceo* in its Compounds, changes *a* into *e* ; as *coerceo*, *exerceo*. But the Compounds of *sedeo* change nothing in the Preterperfect Tense ; for *assideo* makes *assedi* ; and so the rest of its Compounds.

Notes on CHAP. XXX.

(1) *Sorpsi*, which we meet with in Composition, (*absorpsit*, Lucan.) seems to come of *sorbo* of the Third Conjugation. The Verbal *sorbitio* seems to come of *sorbitum*.

(2) *Permulceo* makes also *permulctum* ; *permulctus animus* *sonus*, Gell.

(3) *Farnaby* says, It has no Supine ; but *Rhenius* and others allow it : Hence come *pensilis*, and *propensus*.

(4) *Mulxi* and *mulctum* are the more usual.

(*) *Unde*, *Letum*, Death.

(5) And so the Compounds. As for *pramineo*, *emineo*, *promineo*, and *samineo*, they come from the old Verb *mineo* ; which Verb we read, *Inclinata minent in eandem prodita partem*, Lucrer.

(6) *Censeor* is a Passive of this Verb. *Censeor* also is a Verb Deponent, to reckon or account, Ovid. The Participle *recensus* is from hence : but *recensusus* ab antiq. *censio*, Voss.

(7) This Verb seems antiently to have been us'd of the Third Conjugation : For we find *cavē*, with the last Syllable short ; *Tu cave defendas*, Ovid. The same is found of *valē*, and *respondē*, *Farnab.*

(8) To these may be added, *sveo*, *svevi*, *svetum*, *Rhen.*

(9) Hence *concio*, *concivi*, *concitum* ; so *excio*, *percio*, : And from hence the Frequentatives, *concito*, *excito*. Others deny *cizi* to be of *cio* ; but say, it is formed of *cio*.

(10) Yet we read *solui* ; *Neq; subsidiis, uti solueras, compositis*, Sal.

(11) Such as, *Albeo*, *arceo*, *aceo*, *canceo*, *elareo*, *candeo*, *egeo*, *fatceo*, *floreo*, *horreo*, *languéo*, *liqueo*, *maceo*, *muceo*, *niteo*, *palleo*, *pateo*, *pingueo*, *puteo*, *rubeo*, *scateo*, *fileo*, *sordeo*, *splendeo*, *tumeco*, *vigeo*, &c. But *Galeo*, *careo* *coaleo*, *doleo*, *jaceo*, (for we read *jaciture*, Stat.) *lateo*, *liceo*, to be prized ; (for *liccor* is to prize ;) *nocco*, *parceo*, *placeo*, *oleo*, *saceo*, (if they may be call'd Neuters) have regular Supines.

(12) Such as, *Algeo*, *alsi* ; *convireo*, *convivi* and *convixi* ; *ferveo*, *fervi* (of *ferveo*) and *ferbui* (of *ferbeo* ;) *frendeo*, *frendui* ; *frigeo*, *frixi* ; *fulgeo*, *fulsi* ; *luceo*, *luxi* ; *paveo*, *pavi* ; *frideo*, *fridi* ; *urgeo*, *ursi* ; *urgeo*, *ursi*.

C H A P. XXXI.

Of the Preterperfect Tense, and Supines of Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

VERBS of the Third Conjugation form their Preterperfect Tense and Supine variously: And we must have respect to the Termination of the First Person Singular of the Present Tense.

- Bo. *Bibo, bibi, bibitum*; to drink.
Cumbo, cubui, cubitum; to lie down. (1)
Glubo, glubi or glupsi, glubitum or gluptum; to flea. (2)
Nubo, nupsi, nuptum; to cover, or to be Married. (3)
Scribo, scripsi, scriptum; to write.
- Co. *Ico, ici, ictum*; to smite.
Vinco, vici, victum; to overcome. (4)
Parco, parsi and peperci, parsum and parcitum; to spare. (5)
Dico, dixi, dictum; to speak.
Duco, duxi, ductum; to lead.
- Sco. *Cresco, crevi, cretum*; to grow.
Nosco, novi, notum; to know. (6)
Paseo, pavi, pastum; to feed.
- Do. *Accendo, accendi, accensum, and so incendo*; to enflame. (7)
Defendo, defendi, defensum; to defend; and *offendo*, to offend. (8)
Cudo, cusi, cusum; to forge.

Edo;

Edo, edi, esum ; to eat.

Frendo, frendi, fressum ; to grind or gnash. (9)

Mando, mandi, mansum ; to eat.

Prehendo, prehendi, prehensum ; to take hold of. (10)

Scando, scandi, scansum ; to climb.

Findo, fidi, fissum ; to cleave, or cut.

Fundo, fudi, fusum ; to pour out.

Pando, pandi, pansum or *passum* ; to lay open. (11)

Scindo, scidi, scissum ; to cut.

Cado, cecidi, casum ; to fall.

Cado, cecidi, casum ; to cut, or kill.

Pedo, pepēdi, peditum ; to break Wind backward.

Pendo, pependi, pensum ; to weigh.

Tendo, tetendi, tensum or *tentum* ; to bend. (12)

Tundo, tundi, tnsun, and *tnsum* ; to beat.

Cedo, cessi, cessum ; to give place. (13)

Clando, clausi, clausum ; to shut.

Divido, divisi, divisum ; to divide.

Lædo, læsi, læsum ; to hurt.

Ludo, lusi, lusum ; to play.

Plaudo, plausi, plausum ; to clap Hands.

Rado, rasi, rasum ; to shave.

Rodo, rosi, rosum ; to gnaw.

Trudo, trusi, trusum ; to thrust.

Vado, vasi, vasum ; to go. (14)

Go. *Cingo, cinxi, cinctum* ; to gird.

Figo, fixi, fixum, (seldom *fictum* ;) to fasten.

Fingo, finxi, fictum ; to feign.

Fligo, flixi, flictum, (seldom us'd ;) to afflict. (15)

Frigo, frixi, frictum or *frixum* ; to fry.

Fungo, junxi, junctum ; to joyn.

Lingo, linxi, linctum ; to lick. (16)

Mingo, minxi, mictum; to make Water. }
Mungo, munxi, munctum; to cleanse. } (17)

Pango, panxi, (antiently pegi,) pactum; to fasten,
 to sing, to joyn.

Plango, planxi, planctum; to lament.

Pingo, pinxi, pictum; to paint.

Pungo, punxi, and pupugi, punctum; to prick.

Rego, rexi, rectum; to rule.

Stinguo, stinxi, stinctum; to extinguish. (18)

Stringo, strinxi, strictum; to strain.

Sugo, suxi, suctum; to suck,

Tingo, tinxi, tinctum; to dip or dye.

Ungo or unguo, unxi, unctum; to anoint.

Ago, egi, actum; to do.

Lego, legi, lectum; to read.

Frango, fregi, fractum; to break.

Pago, pepigi, pactum; to covenant. (19)

Tango, tetigi, tactum; to touch.

Mergo, merfi, mersum; to drown.

Spargo, sparsi, sparsum; to scatter.

Tergo, terfi, tersum; to wipe.

Ho. *Traho, traxi, tractum*; to draw.

Veho, vexi, vectum; to carry.

Lo. *Alo, alui, alitum, (seldom altum;)* to nourish.

Molo, molui, molitum; to grind.

Colo, colui, cultum; to worship, to till, &c.

Consulo, Consului, consultum; to ask, or give
 Counsel.

Occulo, occului, occultum; to hide.

Cello, cellui, celsum; to excel. } (20)

Cello, ceculi, celsum; to break. }

Fallo, fefelli, falsum; to deceive.

Pello, pepuli, pulsum; to drive.

Sallo, salii, falsum; to salt. (21)

Tollo,

- Tollo, sustuli, sublatum*; to lift up. (22)
Vello, velli, and vulsi, vulsum; to pluck.
- Mo. *Fremo, fremui, fremitum*; to roar or rage.
Gemo, gemui, gemitum; to groan.
Vomo, vomui, vomitum; to vomit.
Emo, emi, emitum; to buy.
Como, comsi, comtum; to kemb.
Demo, demsi, demtum; to take away.
Premo, pressi, pressum; to press.
Promo, promsi, promptum; to draw forth.
Sumo, sumsi, sumtum; to take. (23)
- No. *Lino, livi, levi, or lini, litum*; to besmear. (24)
Sino, sivi, situm; to suffer.
Sperno, spreui, spretum; to despise.
Sterno, stravi, stratum; to strew.
Cerno, crevi, cretum; to discern, or determine. (25)
Cano, cecini, cantum; to sing. (26)
Gigno, genui, genitum; to beget. (27)
Pono, posui, positum; to put. (28)
Temno, temsi, temtum; to contemn. (29)
- Po. *Carpo, carpsi, carptum*; to crop.
Clepo, clepsi, cleptum; to steal.
Repo, repsi, reptum; to creep.
Scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum; to scratch.
Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum; to engrave.
Serpo, serpsi, serptum; to creep.
Rumpo, rupi, ruptum; to break.
Strepo, strepui, strepitum; to make a noise.
- Quo. *Coquo, coxi, coctum*; to seeth.
Linquo, liqui, lictum; to leave.
- Ro. *Quero, quasivi, quasitum*; to seek.
Sero, sevi, satum; to sow.
Sero, serui, sertum; to set in order.
Tero, trivi, tritum; to wear. (30)

- Curro, curre, cursum* ; to run. (31)
Verro, verri, and versi, versum ; to brush.
Gero, gessi, gestum ; to carry.
Uro, ussi, ustum ; to burn.
- So. *Arcesso, arcessivi, arcessitum* ; to fetch.
Lacesso, lacessivi, lacessitum ; to provoke.
Capesso, si and sivi, capessitum ; to take.
Facezzo, si and sivi, facezzitum ; to be about to do. (32)
- Viso, visi, visum* ; to visit. (33)
Piso, pinxi and pinsui, pinsitum, pinsum and pistum ; to bake.
Depso, depsi, depstitum ; to knead.
- To. *Flecto, flexi, flexum* ; to bend.
Necto, nexi and nexui, nexum ; to knit.
Pecto, pexi and pexui, pexum ; to kemb.
Plecto, plexi and plexui, plexum ; to punish.
Peto, petivi, petitum ; to ask.
Meto, messui, messum ; to mow.
Mitto, misi, missum ; to send.
Sisto, steti, statum ; to stand.
Sisto, stiti, statum ; to make to stand.
Verto, verti, versum ; to turn.
- Vo. *Lavo, lavi, lotum or lautum* ; to wash.
Solvo, solvi, solutum ; to loose.
Vivo, vixi, victum ; to live.
Volvo, volvi, volutum ; to roll.
- Xo. *Nexo, nexui, nexum* ; to knit.
Texo, texui, textum ; to weave.
- Io. *Facio, feci, factum* ; to make.
Jacio, jeci, jactum ; to cast.
Lacio, lexi, lectum ; to entice. } (34)
Specio, spexi, spectum ; to behold. }
Fodio, fodi, fossum ; to dig.

Fugio, fugi, fugitum ; to flee.

Meo, minxi, mictum ; to make Water.

Capio, cepi, captum ; to take.

Cæpio, cæpi, cæptum ; to begin.

Cupio, cupivi, cupitum ; to desire.

Rapio, rapui, raptum ; to snatch.

Pario, peperî, partum ; to bring forth. (35)

Quatio, quassi, quassum ; to shake.

Uo. All Verbs of the Third Conjugation, that end in *no* in the Present Tense, make their Preterperfect Tense in *ui*, and the Supine in *itum* : As, *Induo, indui, indutum*, &c. (36) Except Five :

Luo, lui, luitum ; to pay, or satisfy.

Pluo, plui and pluvi, plutum ; to rain.

Ruo, rui, rutum and ruitum ; to rush.

Fluo, fluxi, fluxum ; to flow.

Struo, struxi, structum ; to build.

There is one Verb in *a* of this Conjugation, that makes the Preterperfect Tense like a Verb Passive ; viz.

Fido, fîsus sum ; to trust.

And so his Compounds. (37)

Many Verbs of this Conjugation want the Supines. (38)

Some want the Preterperfect Tense also ; and consequently the Supines : Such are all Verbs *Inchoatives* (or *Inceptives*) in *sco* (39). Such also are *Ambigo, attollo, fatisco, glisco, hisco, furo, rabio, vergo*, and *suffero*. To which some add *vado*.

Carpo, scando, spargo, in their Compounds, change *a* into *e* throughout ; So does *pasco*, in *compesco, dispesco*.

Cado, Cedo, ago, lego, rego, frango, pango, tango, facio, jacio, lacio, specio, capio, emo, and premo, in many of their Compounds, change their first Vowel into *i*, in the Present Tense only (40): Some change the first Vowel into *i*, both in the Present and Perfect Tense; viz.

Quero, cano, sapio, statuo, ludo, rapioque. (41)

The Compounds of *quatio* make *cutio*; as, *concutio, concussi, concussum, &c.* (42)

Notes on CHAP. XXXI.

(1) **D***Ecumbo* and *recumbo*, &c. are reckon'd by many Grammarians to be Compounds of *cubo*, with *m* put in, and changing the Conjugation. But sure, there is no need of this Explication: for we find *cumbo* of the Third Conjugation; and also, we read both *accubo* and *accumbo*.

(2) *Glupfi* is seldom read; yet we read, *Glupia Menas*, Plaur.

(3) *Nubo* is a Verb Active of the Third Conjugation, and signifies to *cover*: Whenever it signifies to be *Marry'd*, the word *vultum* or *se* is understood; because it was antiently the Custom, that the Bride was always veil'd when she was led by Night to the Bridegroom's House. Yet it must be confess'd, that by an Abuse of the word, *nubo* is sometimes also apply'd to a Man; especially if he be *γαμιαρχὸς ἐπὶ μὴν*; according to that of the Poet, — *Uxor i nubere nolo mea*.

(4) *Vinco* seems to come of the old Verb *vico*; that of *vixā*.

(5) We read *parsurus* in *Livy*: and *parcitum* remains of *parcui*.

(6) *Novi* often signifies the same with *nosco*. This Verb comes from *γινώσκειν*; as appears by the Compounds, *agnosco, ignosco, &c.* Yea, *Varro* uses the old Verb *gnosco*; *Adeste, que serantque gnoscite*.

(7) The simple Verb *cando* is out of use.

(8) The simple Verb is out of use: But we read *sensus, iratus*, Mart. Hence the word *Fiend* seems to come; as also, to *fend*; *defendo*, to drive away, (as *ἀμύνω*.) *Solstitium pecori defendite*, Virg.

(9) The same with *frango, unde, faba freffa*, Martin.

(10) By a *Syncope*, it is often written *prendo*; *Prendidi*, Sil.

(11) Hence

- (11) Hence *passa vela* ; and *expansum* : For *pateo* wants Supines.
- (12) Many of these are found without any Reduplication : So we read, *Vestigal quod regi pendissent*, Liv. *Et qua plena rates carbasae tenderant*, Sen.
- (13) *Cedo facit cessi*, *cecidi cado*, *cado cecidi*.
- (14) *Vasi* and *vasum* are seldom found out of Composition.
- (15) *Fligo* is an unusual word : Yet we read, *Ipsæ se in terram saucius figit cadens*, Liv. teste Martinio. We read also, *Fliæus galea*, Virg. and, *Galea horrida flictu. Adversa ardescit galea*, Sil.
- (16) Hence is the Noun *linctus*, a licking or lapping.
- (17) Both these are unusual words : but instead of *mingo*, we now use *meio* ; and instead of *mungo*, *emungo*.
- (18) *Stingo* and *stinguo* seldom occur ; but the Compounds are usual.
- (19) *Pepigi* comes from the old Verb *pago*, (*ἀπάγο pro πῆγο*) ; as, *cecidi* from *cado*, Oxf. Gram. But *pegi* of *pango* ; as, *fregi* of *frango*.
- (20) Both these Verbs are out of use : But the Compounds of the former, viz. *Antecello*, *excello*, *præcello* ; and of the latter, viz. *Recello*, *percello*, *procello*, are usual. We read also, *excelleo* : *Effice ut excelleas*, Cic.
- (21) *Salli* is seldom found ; *salsum* is usual. There is also *salio*, *salivi*, *salitum*.
- (22) *Tollo* of old made *tuli* and *tetuli*, *tulatum*, *tlatum*, *latum*, Martin.
- (23) The Preterperfect and Supine of *emo*, *como*, *demo*, *sumo*, *pro-mo*, are ill written with *p* in the midst ; for there is neither *b* nor *p* in the Present Tense, as there is in *scribo*, *serpo* : Yet we often find them with *p*. Oxf. Gram.
- (24) The most approv'd Preterperfect Tense is *levi* ; which the Compounds always use.
- (25) *Cerno* in the Signification of *seeing*, is scarce found in the Preterperfect or Supine ; but usually, when it signifies, *to enter upon an Inheritance*.
- (26) *Cano* antiently made *canui* ; as, *Cornicines occanuerunt*, Sallust.
- (27) From the old Verb *geno* : *Hæc loca aliquid genunt*, Var. — *Tanto magis insitiandum totum posse extra corpus durare genique*, Lucr.
- (28) We read also *posivi*, Plaut. and *deposivi*, Catul.
- (29) The simple Verb is seldom found ; But *temtor* is in Sen. Agammem.

(30) Antiently it made *terui, teritum* : *Aut operi insuetas antevuisse manus*, Tibul. *Atticis opibus*, Tac.

(31) We read also *curri*, Tercul. The same befalls other Verbs that double.

(32) These Verbs seem of old to have been of the Fourth Conjugation : for the *Penultima* in the Supine is long. We read also, *arcessivi*, Sallust.

(33) *Viso* seems rather to want the Supine ; and *visum* to be of *video*.

(34) These are unusual words ; yet *Plautus* uses *specio* ; and, *Lacere in fraudem*, Lucrēt.

(35) *Fodio, cupio, pario*, and *sapio*, were antiently of the Fourth Conjugation.

(36) So likewise, *Acuo, arguo, exuo, imbuo, minuo, nuo, statuo, sternuo, suo, spuo, tribuo, delibuo, - ui, - utum*.

{37} Yet we read, *confiderunt*, Liv. L. 4.

{38} Such are, *Antecello antecellui, refello refelli, batuo batui, calvo calvi, eluo clui, ango anxi, clango clangxi, dego degi, prodigo prodegi, satago sategi, disco didici, lambo lambi, malo malui, nolo nolui, volo volui, posco poposci, scabo scabi, fido fidi, psallo psalli, rudo rudi, ningo nixi, frido fridi, sterto stertui, tremo tremui, incesso incesi, sapio sapui or sapivi*, and his Compounds ; *metuo metui*, and the Compounds of the old Verbs *gruo, nuo, spuo* : Yet rarely in old Authors may be found, *Lambitum, discitum, poscitum, metutum, anctum*, Prisc. *Conquinisco conquexi* also wants Supines.

(39) Verbs Inchoatives are frequently us'd instead of their Primitives ; and then we give them the Præterperfect Tense of the Primitive, if it be in use ; as, *senesco senui* : (Yet that Præterperfect Tense shall seldom signify Inchoatively.) But if there be any Inchoative that comes immediately from a Noun, or from a Verb no where found, (which may justly be doubted) it has no Præterperfect Tense lent it : Such perhaps are *sterilefco* and *hylefco*.

(40) Of the Compounds of *Ago, perago* and *satago* keep *a* ; *cogo* and *dego* cast it quite away : Of *Lego, allego, perlego, relego, pralego, sublego*, and *translego*, keep *e* still : Of *Pango, depango, circum-pango, repango*, keep *a*. When *Facio* is compounded with a Preposition, then only it changes *a* into *i*. Of *Emo, coemo* only keep *e*.

(41) Of old, the Compounds of *Cano* kept *a*.

(42) *Ocludo, includo*, &c. seem to be Compounds of *cludo*, not of *claudio* : *Explodo*, &c. of *plodo* : *Abluo, colluo, diluo, eluo, poluo*, are of *luo*, not of *lavo*, Rhen.

C H A P. XXXII.

Of the Preterperfect Tense, and Supines of Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

VErbs of the Fourth Conjugation make their Preterperfect Tense in *ivi*, and their Supine in *itum*; as, *Audio, audivi, auditum*: Except these Nineteen following.

Amicio, amicus or *amixi, amictum*; to Apparel. (1)

Aperio, aperui, apertum; to open. (2)

Operio, operui, opertum; to cover.

Comperio, comperi, compertum; to find by search. } (3)

Reperio, reperi, repertum; to find by chance. }

Farcio, farsci, fartum; to stuff. (4)

Sarcio, farsci, sartum; to patch.

Cambio, campsi, campsum; to exchange Money. (5)

Fulcio, fulsi, fultum; to prop.

Haurio, hausi, haustum; to draw. (6)

Raucio, rausci, rausum; to be hoarse. (7)

Salio, salui, saltum; to leap. (8)

Sancio, sanxi, sanctum; to establish. (9)

Sepio, sepsi, septum; to hedge.

Sepelio, sepelivi, sepultum; to bury.

Sentio, sensi, sensum; to feel.

Singultio, singultivi, singultum; to sob. (10)

Venio,

Venio, veni, ventum; to come.

Vincio, vinxi, victum; to bind.

Many of these Verbs also antiently made the Preterperfect Tense in *ivi*, and the Supine in *itum*. (11)

Some Verbs of this Conjugation want the Supines. (12)

Some want the Preterperfect Tense also: Such are all Verbs *Desideratives* (or *Meditatives*) ending in *-urio*; as, *cœnaturio*; except *esurio*, *nupturio*, and *parturio*; which have the Preterperfect Tense, but not Supines: And such is *ferio*, to smite. (13)

Partio and *farcio*, in their Compounds, change *a* into *e* throughout; as, *impertio*, *infercio*.

Salio, in its Compounds, changes *a* into *i* throughout; as, *desilio*, *infilio*, &c.

Notes

Notes on CHAP. XXXII.

(1) Sometimes also *amicivi*. *Amicio*, qu. *amjicio*, ἀμῖβω : for *am* (from the Greek ἀμῖ) is as much as *circum*, about. *Am terminos*, Cato de R. R.

(2) It is not likely, that these four Verbs should be Compounds of *pario*, as they are generally taken to be ; being of so different Signification from it. It is more probable, that these, and *experior*, and the Noun *peritus* too, came from the old Verb *perio*, ἵκω, *peritum*, (ex περιόω) to try, endeavour, or prove : Which Verb *Priscian* and *Martinus* do acknowledge. But because it is not certain what they are compounded of, they are set here amongst the Simples.

(3) This difference in Signification is not always observ'd.

(4) The Supine of old was *farcitum*, as appears by the Noun *farcimen*, and the Participle *farcitus* in *Cic.* From *farcitum*, *fartum*; thence *fartum*.

(5) A Verb little us'd. Hence is *campfor*, an Usurer.

(6) We read *haurii* in *Var.* and *hausurus* in *Virg.*

(7) There is besides this, *rauceo* of the Second Conjugation : Whence *irraucuerat*, *Cic.*

(8) Instead of the old Preterperfect *salivi*, they use *salui*, and *salii* of late.

(9) *Sancitum* is still more us'd, than *sanctum*. *Sepelitum* is found, *Cato*.

(10) It is doubtful, whether the Supine be *singultitum* or *singultum* : but we choose the latter, because of the Verbal *singultus*, *Oxf. Gram.*

(11) So *farcivi*, *cambivi*, *haurivi*, *salivi*, *sancivi*, *sepivi*.

(12) All Verbs Desideratives in *urio*, want the Supines. And so do also *Cæcutio*, *gestio*, *ineptio*, *absilio*, and *prosilio*, and *veneo* : Which *veneo* is a Compound of *eo* and *venum*, which some make a Supine : *Quod argumento est verbum supino carere ; quia supina fiunt à verbis, non verba à supinis*, *Oxf. Gram.* *Rhenius* makes it an Adverb ; *Farnaby* a Noun : *Veno exercerent*, and *Posita veno*, *Tac.* *Venui habere*, *Apul.* So that in the Fourth Declension, it seems to be a *Monoptote* ; but to be declin'd in the Second.

(13) For a Preterperfect Tense of *ferio*, they antiently us'd *percussi* ; but some later, yet Elegant Writers, use *ferii* : *Apud Horatium*, *jaculatus arces, est, quod Græcè dicitur ἵβαν, id est, ferii* ; *Turneb.* L. 21. c. 20.

CHAP.

C H A P. XXXIII.

Of the Preterperfect Tense, and Supines of Compound Verbs.

Comound Verbs make the Preterperfect Tense, and the Supines, like the Simple Verbs.

The great Exception.

If a Simple Verb double a Letter or two of the Present Tense in the Preterperfect Tense, the same are cast away in the Preterperfect Tense of the Compound Verbs; except in the Compounds of *Do*, *disco*, *sto*, and *posco*, and some few others. (1)

Particular Exceptions in the First Conjugation.

The Simple Verb *crepo* makes *crepui*, and *crepium*; and so do all the Compounds, except *incrêpo* and *discrepo*; which sometimes make *avi* and *atum*. (2)

Do makes *dedi*, *datum*; and so do all his Compounds that are of the First Conjugation (3): But those that are of the Third, make *didi* and *ditum*; as, *addo*, *addidi*, *additum*, &c. Except *abscondo*, which sometimes also makes *abscondi*, *absconsum*.

Frico makes *fricui*, *frictum*: But the Compounds of it sometimes make *avi*, *atum*. (4)

Mico makes *micui*: But *dimico* rather makes *dimisavi*. (5)

Plico makes *plicui*, *plicitum*, or *plicavi* *plicatum*; and so do all his Compounds (6): Except *supplico*,
and

and those that are Compounded with a Noun ; which make *plicavi* and *plicatum* only ; as, *Multiplico*, *duplico*, *triplico*, *quadruplico*, &c. (7)

Sto makes *steti*, *statum* : But the Compounds make in the Preterperfect Tense *steti* ; and in the Supine, either *stitum* or *statum* : But *circumsto* and *supersto* make *steti*. (8)

Particular Exceptions in the Second Conjugation.

Arceo wants the Supines : But *coerceo* and *exerceo* make *ercitum*. (9)

Lateo makes *latitum* ; and *taceo*, *tacitum* : But the Compounds of both want the Supines. (10)

Luceo wants the Supines ; but *polluceo* makes *pollutum*.

Oleo makes *olui*, *olitum* (11) ; and so do the Compounds, *oboleo*, *peroleo* (12), *redoleo* and *suboleo*, in the signification of *Smelling*, or *sending forth a Smell*. *Adoleo*, *adolevi*, *adultum* (13) ; *Exoleo*, *exolevi*, *exoletum* ; *Obsoleo*, *obsolevi*, *obsoletum* ; *Inoleo*, *inolevi*, in the signification of *growing* (14). And yet in another signification, *aboleo* makes *abolevi*, *abolutum*, to *destroy*. (15)

Teneo makes the Supine *tentum* ; and so do all the Compounds, except *attineo* and *pertineo*, which want Supines. (16)

Particular Exceptions in the Third Conjugation.

Cado makes the Supine *casum* : But all the Compounds of it want the Supines ; except *incido*, *occido*, *recido*, that make *casum*. (17)

Edo, and its Compounds, make *esum* : But *comedo* makes both *comesum* and *comestum*. (18)

Lego makes the Preterperfect Tense *legi* ; and so do

do all the Compounds, except Three; *Intelligo, diligo, negligo*; which make *lexi*. (19)

Luo makes *luitum*: But all the Compounds, *lutum*. (20)

Nosco makes *notum*; and so do the Compounds (21): Except *agnosco* and *cognosco*, which make *agnitum* and *cognitum*.

Pango makes *panxi*, or *pegi* in the Preterperfect Tense, and *paſtum* in the Supine. Thoſe Compounds that keep *a*, make alſo *panxi* and *paſtum* (22): But thoſe Compounds that change *a* into *i*, make *pegi* and *paſtum*. (23)

Paſco makes *pavi* and *paſtum*; and ſo do the Compounds *depaſco* and *epaſco*: But *compeſco* and *diſpeſco* make *compeſcui* *compeſcitum*, *diſpeſcui* *diſpeſcitum*. (24)

Ruo makes *ruitum*, (and ſeldom *rutum*) (25): But the Compounds always make *rutum*. (26)

Sero, to ſow, makes *ſatum*: But the Compounds make *ſitum*. (27)

Sido makes *fidi*, and wants the Supines: But the Compounds of it make *fedi* and *ſeſſum*. (28)

ſiſto, to ſtand, makes *ſtet*, *ſtatum*: But all the Compounds make *ſtiti* and *ſtitum*; only *exiſto* ſometimes makes *exſtatum*. (29)

Tendo makes *tenſum* or *tentum*; and ſo do all the Compounds: Yet *attendo*, *contendo*, *diſtendo*, do more uſually make *tentum*; and *oſtendo* more uſually makes *oſtenſum*. (30)

Tundo makes *tunſum* and *tuſum* (31): But the Compounds all make *tuſum*; as, *Contundo*, *contudi*, *contuſum*.

Vello makes the Preterperfect Tense *velli* or *vulſi*: But the Compounds rather chooſe to make *velli*.

Cano,

Cano, capio, facio, jacio, lacio, rapio, when they are compounded, change *a* into *e* in their Supines.

In the Fourth Conjugation.

Salio makes *saltum*, in the Supine; but the Compounds, *sultum*. (32)

Notes on CHAP. XXXIII.

(1) SEE Chap. 28. Fig. (6)

(2) *Discrepo* commonly; *increpo* but seldom.

(3) These Compounds are, *Circundo, pessundo, satisdo, venundo*.

(4) *Refricaturus*, Cic. Hence *fricatio*, and *fricasus*.

(5) But we read *dimicui*, Ovid.

(6) As, *Applico, explico, implico, replico*.

(7) Those that make both *plicitum* and *plicatum*, most commonly form their Future in *rus* from *plicatum*, (*implicaturus*, Ovid.) The Participles of the Preterperfect Tense end both in *itus* and *atus*: But *applicatus* and *complicatus* are most usual.

(8) We read in good Authors, *Præstaturus, constaturus, exstaturus, obstaturus*.

(9) *Arceo* signifies primarily to *contain*, (hence *arx* and *arca*;) secondarily, to *remove* or *drive away*: Of ἀρᾶν, Martin.

(10) As, *Deliteo, conticeo*, &c.

(11) The Supine *olitum* is unusual. But antiently the Verb made *olevi, oletum*.

(12) Yet we read *perolevi*, Lucill.

(13) Yet in this sense we sometimes read *adolui*, as well as *adolevi*, of *adoleo* or *adoleasco*, to grow up: *Postquam adoluerit hac iuventus*, Var.

(14) The Verb *oleo* had antiently sometimes the Signification of *smelling*: The Compounds of it, in this Signification, commonly make *olui* and *olitum*; as, *Oboleo, obolui, obolitum*; (yet in this Signification we sometimes read *adolevi*, to *sacrifice by burning incense*, or the like.) Sometimes it had the Signification of *growing*; (hence *olus, indoleo, soboles, proles*;) And the Compounds of it, in this Signification, commonly make *olevi, oletum*; as, *exoleo, obsoleo, levileturn*.

letum. Sometimes it had the Signification of *destroying*; (*καὶ ἀνοίμι*;) Hence *aboleo*, *abolevi*, *abolitum* : hence *abolitio*.

(15) Instead of *adoleo*, to *grow up*, *exoleo*, *obsoleo*, and *inoleo*; they use rather the Inchoatives, *Adolesco*, *exolesco*, *obsolesco*, *inoleſco*.

(16) *Abstentus hereditate* is current amongst Lawyers.

(17) *Quia incasura erant illa*, Plin.

(18) *Comeſto patrimonio*, Sall. But *comeſum* is better.

(19) These three seem to imitate the Greek Future *λίξω* : Yet we read *intellegi* of old, Ulp. *Neglegi*, Prisc.

(20) See Chap. 31. Fig. (42)

(21) As, *Prænoſco*, *prænovi*, *prænoscum* : Hence *prænotio*, Cic.

(22) As, *Depango*, *circumpango*, *repango* : Of *oppango* it is doubted.

(23) As, *Compingo*, *compegi*, *compactum* : So, *Impingo*, *suppingo*.

(24) *Compeſcitum* & *diſpeſcitum* appoſui, *unius Prisciani auctoritate motus*, qui fortasse legerat apud antiquos, Voſſ.

(25) Hence *Ruta*, *cæſa*. (26) *Diruo*, *cruo*, *obruo*, &c. Yet *eruiturus* is read.

(27) So *Conſero*, *infero* : Yet these and others, of the other *ſero*, make *ſerui*, *ſertum*.

(28) *Cum pax fiderit*, Colum. *Subſido*, *ſubſedi*, *ſubſeſſum* : So *Conſido*, &c.

(29) The Compounds of *ſiſto* are all Neuters ; as, *reſiſto*, *reſiſti*, *reſiſtum* : So *abſiſto*, *conſiſto*, *deſiſto*, *perſiſto*, &c. whole Supines seldom occur.

(30) Yet *oſtentum* is read : Whence is the Frequentative *oſtento*.

(31) *Tuſum* remains of the old Verb *tudo* : Whence *tudito* and *tudes*.

(32) So *Exilio*, *exilui*, *exulium* : *Deſilio*, *inſilio*, &c.

C H A P. XXXIV.

Some Observations about the Preterperfect Tense, and Supines of Verbs.

SOME Verbs that are spell'd alike, yet in different Significations, are both of the First and Third Conjugation; as, *Mando, mandavi*, to command; *Mando, mandi*, to eat, &c. (1)

Some that are spell'd alike, differ in Quantity and Conjugation too, according to their different Signification; as, *Lēgo, lēgavi*, to send away; *Lēgo, legi*, to read, &c. (2)

Some Verbs of the same Signification, do yet vary their Conjugation; as, *Cieo, cies*, and *Cio, cis*, to stir up, &c. (3)

Sometimes Verbs of very different Spelling and Signification too, make the same Preterperfect Tense; as, *Luceo, luxi*, to shine; *Lugeo, luxi*, to lament, &c. (4)

Sometimes such Verbs as aforesaid, have the same Supines; as, *Pando, passum*, to lay open; *Patior, passum*, to suffer. (5)

Yea, sometimes they have both the same Preterperfect and Supine; as both *extollo*, to lift up, and *effero*, to carry out, make *extuli* and *elatum*: *Cerno* and *cresco*, make *crevi* and *cretum*.

Sometimes the same Verb, in the same Signification, varies its Conjugation; as, *Lavo, lavas, lavare*; and, *Lavo, lavis, lavère*, to wash. (6)

Notes on CHAP. XXXIV.

(1) Such are also *Fundo, nullo, pando, pario, pedo, sero, obsero, resero, volo*; such also are *Aggero, appello, compello, colligo, deligo, effero*.

(2) So *allēgo* and *allēgo*, *relēgo* and *relēgo*. *Dico*, and the Compounds *abdico* and *abdico*, *indico* and *indico*, *pradico* and *pradico*, *edūco* and *edūco*; so *cōlo* and *pēdo*, *cōlari* and *cōlui*, *pēdari* and *pēpēdi*.

(3) So *denso* and *denseo*, *excello* and *excelleo*, *caveo* and *cavo*, *ferreo* and *ferro*, *fulgeo* and *fulgo*, *lino* and *linio*, *oleo* and *olo*, *sallo* and *salio*, *strideo* and *strido*, *tergeo* and *tergo*, *tueor* and *tuor*, and the Compounds, *contueor*, *intueor*, *obtueor*.

(4) So *aceo* and *acuo*, *frigeo* and *frigo*, *mulceo* and *mulgeo*, *pasco* and *paveo*, *pendeo* and *pendo*, *fulcio* and *fulgeo*.

(5) So *maneo* and *mando*, *succenseo* and *succendo*, *teneo* and *tendo*, *vinco* and *vivo*.

(6) So *nexo* and *sono* make both *as* and *is*. *Cupio*, *fodio*, *pario*, *sapio*, and *aggredior*, are found commonly of the Third, and sometimes of the Fourth Conjugation. *Morior* is of the Third Conjugation; yet we read sometimes *moriris*, and *moriri*, of the Fourth. *Orior* and *potior* are of the Fourth, (and so we always read *oriri*, and *potiri*, in the Infinitive Mood :) But yet amongst the Poets, we often read *overis*, *oritur*, *orimur*, *potitur*, *poteris* of the Third: — *Nos te poteremur*, *Achilles*, *Ovid*.

C H A P. XXXV.

Of Verbs irregular in declining.

VErbs that depart from the ordinary way of declining, are call'd *Irregular* and *Anomalous*: Such is the Verb *sum*, and its Compounds. All its Compounds are declin'd like its self, except *prosum* and *possum*.

Prosum only differs in this, That it takes in the Letter *d*, when-ever the Verb *sum*, in any Person, begins with a Vowel; as, *Prodes, prodest, prodestis, proderam, prodero, prodessem, prodesse*.

Possum is Compounded of the Adjective *potis* or *pos*, able, and *sum*. When-ever the Verb *sum* begins with *s* in any Tense or Person, it takes *pos*: When-ever it begins with *e*, it takes *pot*; except *essem* and *esse*: When-ever it begins with *f*, it takes *pot*, and casts away *f*: As,

Possum, I am able; *potes*, thou art able; *potes*; Plur. *Possumus, potestis, possunt*. (1) Imperfect, *Poteram*, I was able; *poteras*, &c. Fut. *Potero, poteris*, &c. *Caret Imperativo*. Subjunct. Present, *Possim, possis, possit*; Plur. *Possimus, possitis, possint*. Imperfect, *Pessem, posses, posset*; Plur. *Pessemus, possetis, possent*. Infinit. Present, *Posse*. Indicat. Preterperfect, *Potui, potuisti, potuit*; Plur. *Potuimus, potuistis, potuērunt* or *potuēre*. *Potueram, potuerim, potuissē, potuero, potuisse*; *caret Futuro Infinitivi*.

Volo, I will; *nolo*, I nill; *malo*, I had rather, are thus declin'd: Indicat. Present, *Volo, vis, vult*; Plur. *Volumus, vultis, volunt*. *Nolo, nonvis, nonvult*; Plur.

Nolumus, nonvultis, nolunt. Malo, mavis, mavult; Plur. Malumus, mavultis, malunt. Imperfect, Volabam, nolebam, malebam, &c. like legebam. Fut. Volam, nolam, malam, like legam. Volo and malo want the Imperative Mood. Nolo makes noli, nolito; Plur. Nolite, nolitote. Subjunct. Present, Velim, velis, velit; Plur. Velimus, velitis, velint. So Nolim, nolis, &c. Malim, malis, &c. Imperfect, Vellem, velles, vellet; Plur. Vellemus, velletis, vellent: So nollem, and mallem. Infinit. Present, Velle, nolle, malle. Indicat. Preterperfect, Volui, nolui, malui, &c. Preterplup. Volueram, nolueram, malueram, &c. Subjunct. Preterperfect, Voluerim, noluerim, maluerim, &c. Preterplup. Voluisssem, noluissem, maluisssem, &c. Fut. Voluero, nolucro, maluero, &c. Infinit. Preterperf. Voluisse, noluisse, maluisse. They want the Future, because they want the Supines. (2)

Edo is declin'd in the Indicative Present Tense; Edo, I eat; edis, or es, edit, or est; Plur. Edimus, editis or estis, edunt. Imperfect, Edebam, &c. like legebam. Fut. Edam, &c. like legam. Imperat. Es, esto, or ede, edito, eat thou; edito, eat he; Plur. Este, estote, or edito, editote, edunto. Subjunct. Present Tense, Edam, edas, &c. like legam. Imperfect, Ederem or essem, ederes or esses, &c. Infinit. Present, Edere or esse. Indicat. Preterperfect, Edi, &c. like legi: And so all the Tenses that follow. (3)

Fero is declin'd in the Indicative Mood Present Tense, Fero, fers, fert; Plur. Ferimus, fertis, ferunt. Imperfect, Ferebam, like legebam. Fut. Feram, like legam. Imperat. Fer, ferto, bear thou; ferto; Plur. Feramus, ferte, or fertote, ferunto. Subjunct. Present, Feram, feras, &c. like legam. Imperfect, Ferrem, ferres, ferret; Plur. Ferremus, ferretis, ferrent. Infinit. Ferre. Indicat. Preterperfect, Tuli, tulisti, &c. like legi: Tul-
leram,

leram, tulerim, tuliffem, tulero, tuliffe. Infinit. Imperfect, *Tuliffe.* Fut. *Laturum esse.* (4)

Feror is the Passive, from *fero* ; and is thus declin'd : Indicat. Present Tense, *Feror, ferris* or *ferre, fertur* ; Plur. *Ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.* Imperfect, *Ferebar, &c.* like *legebar.* Fut. *Ferar, fereris, &c.* like *legar.* Imperat. *Ferre* or *fertor, be thou borne ; fertor* ; Plur. *Ferimini* or *feriminor, feruntor.* Subjunct. Present, *Ferar, feraris, &c.* like *legar.* Imperfect, *Ferrer, ferreris* or *ferrere, ferretur* ; Plur. *Ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.* Infinit. *Ferri.* Indicat. Preterperfect. *Latus sum* or *fui, &c.* like *Lectus sum* or *fui* : And so all the Tenses that follow. (5)

Fio is declin'd thus : Indicat. Present Tense, *Fio, fis, fit* ; Plur. *Fimus, fitis, fiunt.* Imperfect, *Fiebam, fiebas, &c.* like *audiebam.* Fut. *Fiam, fies, &c.* like *audiam.* Imperat. *Fito, be thou made ; fito, be he made* ; Plur. *Fite* or *fitote, fiunto.* Subjunct. Present, *Fiam, fias, &c.* like *audiam, ---as.* Imperfect, *Fierem, fieres, fieret* ; Plur. *Fieremus, fieretis, fierent.* Infin. *Fieri.* Indicat. Preterperfect, *Factus sum* or *fui, &c.* like *Lectus sum* or *fui* : And so all the Tenses that follow. (6)

Sum, and his Compounds, want Gerunds and Supines, and the Participle of the Present Tense. (7)

Eo and *queo* make *ibam* and *quibam, ibo* and *quibo* ; the Gerunds, *eundi* and *queundi.* But *ambio* is every where declin'd regularly like *audio.* (8)

Veneo wants Gerunds and Supines, and Participles, though it be a Compound of *eo* ; and makes the Preterperfect *venii*, rather than *veniui.*

Circumceo, another Compound of *eo*, before *i*, sometimes keeps *m*, and sometimes casts it away ; as, *Circumis* or *circuis, circumit* or *circuit.*

Notes on CHAP. XXXV.

(1) **I**Nstead of *poteſt*, is read in old Authors *poteſtur*; (there is alſo *poſſetur* and *poteratur* :) *Quod tamen expleri nullâ ratione poteſtur*, Lucret. *Siqua poteſtur inveſtigari via*, Pacuv. But then it is always joyn'd with an *Infiniteſive Paſſive*. In ſtead of *poſſem* and *poſſe*, of old they ſaid *poteſſem* and *poteſſe*.

(2) *Vis, vult, vultis*, or (antiently) *volis*, are contracted by Syncope of *volis, volit, volitis*; and the like Syncope is in other Tenſes: So *nolo* of *non* or *ne*, and *volo*; *malo* of *magis* and *volo*: *malim* and *malle* are now in uſe, in ſtead of *mavelim* and *mavellem*.

(3) *Comedo* and *exedo* are declin'd like *edo*; as, *Comedo, comedis, or comes*, &c. In the Paſſive, we read *eſtur*, as well as *editur*: *Eſtur ut occultâ vitia tere dine navis*, Ovid.

(4) *Fer*, *fert*, *fertis*, are alſo contracted of *feris, ferit, feritis*. It takes the Preterperfect *tuli*, of the old Verb *tollo*, or *tolo*.

(5) *Feris* and *fertur* are alſo contracted of *fereris* and *feritur*.

(6) *Fio* has no Preterperfect; but they give it the Preterperfect of the old Verb *facior*, in all the Compounds that keep a; as, *calefacio, caleſco*; *frigeſacio, frigeſco*. All the reſt of the Compounds, that change *a* into *i*, are regular in the Preſent Tenſe and Preterperfect; as, *Inficio, inficior, infectus ſum*, &c. The Inchoatives in *ſco, caleſco, frigeſco*, &c. are more Elegant to be uſ'd, than *caleſco, frigeſco*, &c. Vall.

(7) The old Participle of the Preſent Tenſe of the Verb *ſum*, was *ens*; which Philoſophers uſe to this day. *Absens, potens*, and *praſens*, are in uſe, but not as Participle.

(8) Yet we read *ambibam*, in ſtead of *ambiebam*, Liv. Some Compounds of *eo* ſometimes make the Future in *eam, ies, iet*; Vid. ſupra Cap. XXV. Fig. (4). The Participle *iens* is ſeldom in uſe; but the Oblique Caſes, *euntis, eunti*, &c. are common: And ſo all the Compounds make this Participle; as, *rediens, redeuntis*; except *ambiens, ambientis*. *Queo* and *nequeo* are declin'd like *eo*, but that they want Gerunds and Supines, and the Participle of the Preſent Tenſe. We read *queatur*, and *quitus ſum* of old, before an *Infiniteſive Paſſive*; *ſuppleri ſumma queatur*, Lucret. *Forma in tenebris agnoſci non quita eſt*, Ter.

C H A P. XXXVI.

Of Defective Verbs.

BESIDES the Verbs already spoken of, that want the Preterperfect Tense or Supines, (and so may be call'd *Defectives*) there are also some Verbs that want certain Moods, Tenses, or Persons : Such are,

AIO. Indicat. Mood Present Tense, *Aio*, I affirm; *ais*, *ait*; Plur. *Aiunt*. Imperfect, *Aiebam*, &c. throughout. Imperat. Mood, *Ai*, *aito*; Plur. *Aite*, *aitote*. Particip. *Aiens*, *aiensis*, &c. (1)

APAGE is of the Imperative Mood only : Sing. *Apage*, get hence; Plur. *Apagite*. (2)

AVE, *SALVE*, *VALE*, are words of Salutation; and are thus varied : Imperat. *Ave* or *avete*, hail thou; Plur. *Avete* or *avetote*. Infin. *Avere*. So likewise, *Salve*, all hail thou; and *Vale*, farewell. (3)

CEDO. Imperat. Sing. *Cedo*, give, or tell; Plur. *Cedite*. (4)

DEFIT, *desiet*, *defiat*, *desieri*; to be wanting.

DOR, *FOR*, *DER*, *FER*, in the First Person Singular, are not read : But the Compounds, *Addor*, *condor*, *reddor*, &c. are usual. (5)

FOREM, I might be; *fores*, *foret*; Plur. *Forent*, are the Persons of the Subjunctive Mood, Imperfect Tense : Infinit. Fut. *Fore*. (6)

INFIT, *he begins*, is only in use : *Ita faciet infit*, Thus he begins to speak.

INQUAM, I say; *inquis*, *inquit*; Plur. *Inquimus*, *inquitis*, *inquiunt*. Imperfect, *Inquiebam*, &c.

Fut. *Inquam, inquires, &c.* Imperat. *Inque*; Plur. *Inquite, or inquitote, inquitunto.* Subjunct. Present, *Inquias, inquit*; *inquiat, inquatis, inquant.* Particip. *Inquiens.* (7)

OVAT; Participle, *Ovans.* (8)

QUÆSO, *I pray*; Plur. *Quæsumus.* (9)

SCIO never makes *sci*, in the Imperative Mood; nor *Fio, fi*; nor *Soleo, solebo*, in the Future Tense.

ODI, and *MEMINI*, want the Present Tense, and all the Tenses that are formed from the Present Tense: only in the Imperative Mood, *Memini* makes Sing. *Memento*; Plur. *Mementote.* Yet they have the Signification of the Present Tense; as, *Memini*, I remember; *Odi*, I hate; and so have *Cæpi* and *Novi*, for the most part. (10)

DIC, DUC, FER, FAC, are Imperatives, commonly us'd by an *Apocope*, for *dice, duce, fere, face.* (11)

SIS, SULTIS, SODES, are contracted of *si vis, si vultis, si aude.*

Notes on CHAP. XXXVI.

(1) *ATIO* is a Verb of the Fourth Conjugation: And besides the Tenses here assign'd to it, did antiently make the *Subjunctive* Present *aiam, &c.* and the *Indicative* Preterperfect *aui* and *ai, aisti*; Plur. *aistis, aierunt, Rhen.*

(2) These are *Greekish* words, of ἀπαγω, *abigo*, to drive away. Hence it is join'd to an Accusative Case; as, *Apage banc caniculam*, Plaut. When *apage* or *apagesis* (for *si vis*) is us'd to signify *hie, or away*, the Accusative *te* is suppos'd to be understood; and so *vos*, after *apagite*: For the Verb is Active and Transitive. In like manner is *age* or *agedum, agite* or *agitedum*, sometimes us'd. And *agite* or *agitedum* always require a Plural Noun; but not so *age*. This *age* is sometimes put Adverbially.

(3) These

(3) These are Verbs of the Second Conjugation. When *Ave* or *Vale* are Words of Salutation, they are thus Defectives: Otherwise *aveo* to *desire*, and *valeo* to *avail*, are Perfect Verbs. Yet in this Sense of *Saluting*, we also read *salvebis* and *valebis*, Cic. *Salveo* is also us'd; but they say, it is by way of Jest, in the Person of a Clown, *Plaut. Truc. Salve* and *Ave* are the Salutations of one coming, *Vale* of one departing, Vall. But of old, when they departed from those, whom they were never to see more, they joyn'd *salve* and *vale* together: And so (says *Varro*), *Mortuos salvere & valere jubebant*. *Suetonius* (in *Galba*) seems to intimate, that *Salve* signify'd as much as our *Good-morrow*, and *Vale* as much as *Good-Night*. *Retinuit obsoletum morem, ut liberti seroque frequentes adessent, de mane salvere, vesperi valere, sibi singuli dicerent*.

(4) By Contraction, *Cette*. *Cette dextras nunc jam*, *Plaut.*

(5) But *daris*, *faris*, and all the rest, are usual. *Diomedes* acknowledgeth *effor*.

(6) So *afforem*, *deforem*: Yea, we read *confore*, Ter. *abfore*, Virg. *profore*, Hor. See the Notes upon the Verb *sum*.

(7) Some contend for *inquis*. Some add the Preterperfect *Inquisti*, *inquit*, *inquistis*. We read also *inquito*, *Plaut. Aul.*

(8) *Ovas*, *ovarent*, *ovandi*, *ovatio*, Gell.

(9) *Quasivi*, *Sallust.* *Quasere*, *Plaut.*

(10) In stead of *odi*, we also read *osus sum*: *Inimicos semper osus sum obtuerier*, *Plaut.* *Osurus*, and *exosus*, are common. And *meniens* is found in *Auson.* *Quasi ab antiquo memino*, *Voss.*

(11) And so the Compounds, *Edic*, *educ*, *reduc*, *lenefac*, *perfer*: But those Compounds of *facio*, which change *a* into *i*, make the Imperative at length, and suffer no *Apocope*: So we always say, *Effice*, *perface*, &c. We read also *inger* for *ingere*, *Catul.* The Comical Poets, and some others, use *dice*, *duce*, *fere*, *face*.

Concerning *ausim*, *faxim*, and the like, see *Chap. XXVI. Fig. (10)*

C H A P. XXXVII.

Of Verbs Impersonals.

THere are many Verbs that are often us'd in the Third Person Singular ; and seldom in any other Person : And these are commonly call'd *Impersonals*. (1)

They are known in *English*, by the sign *it* coming before them.

These are either Actives ; as, *Delectat*, it delighteth : or Neuters ; as, *Oportet*, it behoveth : or Passives ; as, *Curritur*, it is run.

The Proper Impersonals are reckon'd to be Ten ; and all of them of the Second Conjugation : viz. *Decet*, *libet*, *licet*, *liquet*, *miseret*, *oportet*, *piget*, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *taedet*.

The Verbs that are Impersonals by accident, are many : For such are all those, that being entire Verbs Personals by Nature, yet being us'd without a certain Nominative Case, (an *Infinitive* Mood following, or a *Subjunctive*, with *quod* or *ut*) do take upon them the Nature of Impersonals.

Of this sort are,

In the First Conjugation ; *Delectat*, *juvat*, *stat*, *constat*, *præstat*, *restat*, *vacat*.

In the Second ; *Apparet*, *attinet*, *debet*, *patet*, *placet*, *pertinet*, *solet*.

In the Third ; *Accidit*, *conducit*, *contingit*, *cœpit*, *desinit*, *sufficit*.

In the Fourth ; *Convenit*, *evenit*, *expedit*.

And

And amongst the Anomalous Verbs ; *Est, interest, potest, predest, fit, refert.*

A Verb Impersonal Passive, may be made from the Third Person Singular of any Verb that may be call'd *Active*, either from a Transient or Immanent Act ; as, *auditur, statur.* (2)

Impersonals ordinarily want Gerunds, Supines, Participles, and the *Imperative Mood.* (3)

Any Verb Personal almost may put on the Form of an Impersonal ; and any Impersonal may be us'd Personally.

Notes on CHAP. XXXVII.

(1) **T**Here are indeed no Verbs properly Impersonal, except Verbs of the *Infinitive Mood* ; which are all Impersonal. If any Verbs be call'd *Impersonals*, because they take no Nominative Case of a certain Person before them, this is not true of any Verb whatsoever ; for even the most properly call'd of all these pretended Impersonals, are often found to have a Nominative Case before them. *Istoc fatinus nostro generi non decet*, Plaut. *Facite quod vobis lubeat* ? What shall please you ? Ter. *Quod licet ingratum est*, Ovid. *Si habes quod tibi liqueat*, Cic. So the Passives ; *Nunc tertia vivitur ætas*, Id. *Tota mihi dormitur hyems*, Martial. If they be call'd Impersonals, because they have only the Third Person Singular, (as most Grammarians contend) neither is this true ; for they are found in other Persons : *Loquere mihi tuum nomen nisi piges*, Plaut. *Ita nunc pudeo atque pæreo*, Id. *Si non dedecui tua jussa*, Stat. *Miserere mei anuis*, Enn. *Arcadii misereſcite regis*, Virg. *Oportet aliquando invenitur personale*, Quintil. *In hoc ipſo pænitemus* ; and, *Post factum non pænitebis* ; Ver. Verſ. Bibl. *Judiib.* Cap. 18. 14. and *Sirac.* Cap. 32. 24. And in the Third Person, they are us'd very familiarly : *Parvum parva decet*, Hor. *Non te hæc pudet* ? Ter. *Semper metuet, quem ſava pudebunt*, Lucan. *Verbisque ejus defatigati pertadiſſent*, Gell. *Quæ adſolent quæque oportent ſigna*, Ter. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant*, Id. *Omnia cum liceant, non licet eſſe pium*. So the Passives : *Quo in genere multa peccantur*, Cic.

NoEs

Noctes vigilantur amara, Ovid. *In cæteris gentibus quæ regnantur*, Tac. *Sacris passibus hæ potantur unda*, Martial. So that in neither of these Senses, are there any Verbs Impersonals. Yet it must be confess'd, that there are some Verbs, whose certain Nominative Case is seldom express'd; as, *deceat, libet, licet, oportet*, &c. When we find it thus, we must either say, That the Oblique Case supplies the place of the Nominative: as, *Pænitet me conditionis*, is the same with that of *Plautus*, *Conditio me pænitet*: *Pudet me horum*, is the same with that of *Terence*, *Hæc pudet*. Or that a Nominative Case of its own Signification is understood; as, *Pænitentia pænitet me*; *Pudor pudet*, &c. Or that a Nominative Case is included in the very Impersonal it self; as, *Libet mihi hoc facere*, i. e. *Libido est mihi hoc facere*. Or that the Infinitive Mood that follows, performs the Office of a Nominative Case: as, *Licet tibi tacere, Oportet illud agere*; where *tacere* and *agere* must stand in stead of Nominative Cases: q. d. *Tacere est res licita tibi*; *Agere illud est necessarium*. *Nec refert, si quadam, dum res ipsa clamat, duriuscule sic resolvantur*, Oxf. Gram. Or (because we cannot well suppose a Motion without a Mover,) we may say, That these Impersonals have a Substantive before them, of which they are the Motion; to wit, the Pronoun, *it*; the Deputy of *thing*, *id* or *illud*.

(2) But it cannot be made from a Verb Neuter, properly so call'd. *Caletur* indeed is read in *Plautus*; *Quam olim muscarum est, cum caletur, maxime*. This is an obsolete word, like *posestur*, says *Martin*: Others say, That *caleo* was sometimes antiently us'd Actively.

(3) Yet we read, *Pænitendi, pænitens, pænitendus*; *pudendo, puditurus, pudendus*; *persus, licitus, liciturus, pigendus*; Vid. *Danef. Libeat, liceat*, &c. are not Imperatives, but Subjunctives.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

Of Gerunds and Supines.

THere belong to Verbs three *Gerunds*, ending in *di, do, dum.* (1)

Their signification is commonly Active or Neuter, seldom Passive. (2)

The *Gerund* in *di* hath the signification of a Genitive Case; as, *legendi, of Reading, or of being Read.*

The *Gerund* in *do* hath the signification of an Ablative Case, and seldom of a Dative; as, *legendo, in Reading, or in being Read; for Reading, or for being Read.* (3)

The *Gerund* in *dum* hath the signification of the Accusative Case, and sometimes of the Nominative; as, *ad legendum, to Read, or to be Read; legendum est mihi, I must Read.*

Gerunds come from any Verbs Actives, Neuters, or Deponents, but never from Passives.

They are formed from the Preterimperfect Tense of the Verb, by changing, in the First Conjugation, *abam* or *abar* into *andi, ando, andum*; and in the rest of the Conjugations, by changing *ebam* or *ebar* into *endi, endo, endum.* (4)

There belong also to Verbs two *Supines*; the first ending in *um*, the latter in *u*.

The first *Supine* commonly signifies like the Infinitive Mood Active, or Neuter; as, *amatum, to Love, coenatum, to Sup.*

It

It hath no regard to Number or Gender ; and always implies some kind of motion. (5)

The latter *Supine* commonly signifies like the Infinitive Mood Passive ; as, *amatu*, to be Loved. (6)

Therefore few Verbs Neuters or Deponents have this *Supine*. (7)

Notes on CHAP. XXXVIII.

(1) **G**erunds and Supines are plac'd between the Verbs and Participles, because of the affinity they have to both ; though indeed themselves are neither. So great is the affinity, that the Infinitive Mood of a Verb is often us'd instead of a Gerund ; as, *Consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere*, Cæsar. *Grammarians* are not agreed, what part of Speech to call them : Yea, Some make the latter Supine to be a distinct part of Speech. It is most Intelligible and accountable to say, that they are Nouns Substantives Verbals ; yet taken immediately from an Adjective or Participle of the same Termination : As is usual both in *Greek* and *Latin*, for Neuter Adjectives to be us'd for Substantives. So that, *pugnandum est*, or *scribendum est*, is the same with *pugna est*, or *scriptio est* : only the Gerund signifies like a Verb ; and there is a signification of a kind of necessity or duty, superadded. Neither is it to be wondred at, if we find an Accusative Case after the Gerund ; for why should not *scribendum est literas*, for *scriptio literas*, be as good Syntax ; as, *Curatio hanc rem*, Plaut. *Fabio hanc rem*, Id. For it is very usual for Nouns Verbals to govern the same Case as the Verbs do that they come of ; as, *Quod si iustitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus institutisq; populorum*, Cic. *Hanno vitabundus castra hostium*, &c. Liv. So when we say, *Tempus est videndi Lunæ*, it will be the same with *Tempus est visionis Lunæ* : For a Genitive Case govern'd of a Substantive oftentimes governs another Genitive Case after it ; as, *Famæ sentis bellua quæ sit hominum querela frontis tuæ* ? Cic. *Consul est designatus maximâ orbitate Republica virorum talium*, Id. If we speak to a Woman, we say, *Cupidus sum videndi tui*, not *videndæ*, (for those Pronouns, *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, ad-

mic

mit of no Adjectives) q. d. *Cupidus sum visionis tui ipsius*. So, *Ego ejus videndi cupidus rectè sequor*, Ter. where he speaks of a Woman: *Et spem placandi damq; adimung; tui*, Ovid. But now in purer times, the Verbals do not so ordinarily govern the Case of their Verbs: So that it is now more Elegant to say, *Litteræ scribendæ sunt*, than *scribendum est litteras*. Thus we may be able to explain those difficult Modes of Speech; Such as *Uritque videndo fœmina*, Virg. i. e. *in videre*, or *in visu ipsius*, or *dum videtur*: *Annulus in digito subterscenatur habendo*, Lucret. i. e. *in haberi* or *dum habetur*. *Cum ipse ad imperandum vocaretur*, Sallust. i. e. *ad imperari*, or *ut ei imperaretur*: *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel parendum potius*, Cic. i. e. *ad imperari*, or *ut tibi imperetur, & tu pareas*. Now Gerunds being Noun Substantives, must be but of one Gender, viz. the Neuter, but are us'd in every Case except the Vocative; as, *docendum est*; *docendi causâ*; *apud docendo*; *ad docendum*; *in docendo*. They are Pentaproxes of the Second Declension,

Supines also are Verbal Noun Substantives of the Fourth Declension; but they are *Tetraptotes*, viz. us'd in the Nominative, Dative, Accusative and Ablative Cases. In the Nominative; as, *Ventum est*, *Itum est*: In the Dative; as, *Horrendum auditu*, *Mirabile visu*, for *auditu*, *visu*: In the Accusative; as, *Eo spectatum*, *Amatum esse*: In the Ablative; as, *Didu opus est*, Ter. *Parvum didu*, Plin. They are Substantives, and therefore do not change their Gender; as, *Vitam ire perditum*, not *perditam*, Liv. *Latrocinia iri sublaturum*, not *sublata*, Id. *Nutricem accersitum iit*, Ter. The construction of Supines is the same with the construction of other Verbals; they govern the Case of their Verb; as, *Me ultro accusatum advenit*, Ter. *Gratis servitum matribus ibo*, Virg. And themselves depend upon a Preposition understood: For as we say, *Eo Romam*; so we say, *Ducitur immolatum*, i. e. *ad immolatum*, or *immolationem*. *Eo perditum* for *ad perditionem*. And if an Accusative Case follow, still it is govern'd of the Supine as of a Verbal; as, *Vitam suam perditum ire properat*, Liv. Neither doth it hurt this Doctrine, that the first Supine is sometime found depending upon the Verb *itur* or *iri*; as, in *Contumelia qua mihi factum itur*, Gell. *Reus damnatum iri videbatur*, Quintil. *Præda videbatur perditum iri*, Plaut. For still the first Supine (as being a Noun Substantive of the Accusative Case) is govern'd of *ad*; and *iri* is the same with *duci*, which ought not to seem harsh; because *eo* is a Verb Active, as appears by *itur* and *iri*: Yea, and *Schiopius* himself acknowledges, *eor* in the first Person. So, *Ad me mis-*
sum

sum facias cohortes, i. e. *facias missum* or *missionem cohortes*; as, *Idcirco* *hanc rem*. The Supine in *u* depends commonly upon the Prepositions *in* or *a*; as, *Auditu jucundum*; *Surgit cubitu*. In stead of this latter Supine, they sometimes us'd an Infinitive Mood; as, *Fessis leviora tolli Pergama Graiis*, Hor. Sometimes a Gerund in *dum* with a Preposition; as, *Cibus ad coquendum facillimus*, Cic. Sometimes a Verbal; as, *Dignus sane Seneca lectione*, Gell. And sometimes a Gerund in *do*; as, *Idem traducti à disputando ad dicendum inopes reperiantur*, Cic. for *à disputatu* or *disputatione*. *Et ratio est, quia cum Gerundia, Supina, & quandoque Infinitivus, nomina verbalia sint, nihil magis familiare, quam nomen unum pro altero ejusdem originis usurpare*. Oxf. Gr.

(2) *Convenit hac frequentia censendi causâ*, Cic. i. e. *Ut censeatur*. *Athenas erudiendi gratiâ missus*, Justin. i. e. *ut erudiretur*. *Rubens ferrum non est habile tundendo*, Plin. i. e. *ut tundatur*, *Emporetica (charta) est inutilis scribendo*, Id. *Res ad judicandum difficilis: Verba ad audiendum jucunda*, i. e. *judicari, audiri*. *Cantando rumpitur anguis*, i. e. *dum incantatur*. *Memoria excellendo augetur*, for *dum excolitur*, Quint.

(3) So *Non est solvendo*, viz. *aptus, idoneus, or sufficiens*, he is not able to pay.

(4) Verbs of the Third and Fourth Conjugation often turn *e* into *u* in the Gerunds; as, *faciundi, experiundi, &c.*

(5) But this motion is sometimes very occult; as, in *do filiam nuptum*; *ubi mutatio familie notatur*. Where there is no motion there it is a Participle; as, *Inventum & adductum curabo*, Ter.

(6) Yet the first Supine always signifies Passively in the Infinitive Mood Passive; as, *Amatum iri*. And the latter Supine is sometimes us'd Actively; *Obsonatu redeo*, Plaut. *Primus cubitu surgat*, Cato.

(7) Yet we read *Eventu mirabile: Ardua imitatu*; and some such like.

C H A P. XXXIX.

Of Participles. *

A *Participle* is a part of Speech, which partakes of a Noun, as to Declension, Case, and Gender; and of a Verb, as to Signification, Tense, and Construction. (1)

It is always form'd from a Verb, either immediately or mediately. (2)

There are four kinds of Participles: One of the *Present* Tense, another of the *Future* in *rus*, another of the *Perfect* Tense, and another of the *Future* in *dus*.

The Participle of the *Present* Tense in *English* ends in *ing*, and in *Latin* in *ans* or *ens*. (3) And it is formed from the *Preterimperfect* Tense of the *Indicative* Mood, by changing the last Syllable into *ns*; as, from *amabam*, *amans*, loving; from *sequebar*, *sequens*, following. (4)

This Participle belongs only to Verbs Actives, Neuters, and Deponents; and is declin'd like a Noun Adjective of one Termination. (5)

The Participle of the *Future* in *rus* signifies like the Infinitive Mood of the Verb Active or Neuter. It is form'd from the first Supine, by changing *m* into *rus*; as, from *amatum*, *amaturus*, to love, or about to love; from *calitum*, *caliturus*, to be warm, or about to be warm. (6)

This Participle also belongs only to Verbs Actives, Neuters, and Deponents; and is declin'd like a Noun Adjective of three endings. (7)

The Participle of the *Perfect* Tense in *English* ends in *d*, *t*, or *n*; and in *Latin* in *tus*, *sus*, or *xus*. It is formed from the first Supine, by changing *m* into *s*; as, *amatus* loved, *visus* seen, *flexus* bent. (8)

This Participle belongs principally to the Verbs Passives: But Verbs Deponents that signify Transitive, have also this Participle: But then they commonly signify Actively, like Participles of the *Present* Tense; as, *sequutus* following, or having followed. (9)

The Participle of the Future in *dus* signifies always like the Infinitive Mood Passive. (10)

It is formed from the Participle of the *Present* Tense, by changing *s* into *dus*, as from *amans*, *amandus*, to be loved.

This Participle belongs principally to the Verbs Passives: But Deponents also, that signify transitive, have this Participle; as, *sequendus*, to be followed. (11)

Note that Participles are oftentimes turned into Nouns. (12)

Some Compound Participles signify Passively, whose Simples signify Actively. (13)

Some Participles are compar'd. (14)

The same word, in different significations, may be both a *Participle* and a *Noun*. (15)

Notes on CHAP. XXXIX.

(*) Particles were Invented for brevity and varieties sake. They serve for brevity, because by the means of them, two acts are conjoined immediately without any Copulative; as, *Miserè legatos memoraturos*, Tac. *Excruciatum necat*, Sallust. i. e. *qui memorarent*, and *postquam excruciauit*. They serve also for variety, that the repetition of the same Verb might not be offensive.

(1) And therefore those that seem to be Participles, and yet differ from the government of the Verb. are not Participles, but Nouns; as, *Amans pecunia*, *Patiens inedia*: for the government of the Verb would require, *Amans pecuniam*, *Patiens inediam*. And so in the other degrees; as, *Amantior pecunia*, *Patientissimus inedia*.

(2) Most Participles are form'd from Verbs immediately; as, *adamans* from *adamo*, *edocens* from *edoco*, &c. But some are form'd from Verbs more remotely, allowing the Interposition of a Preposition; as, *insperans*, not expecting; although there be no such Verb as *inspero*; because it keeps Tense and Signification and Government with the Verb; as, *Insperante hoc & invito Pamphilo*, Ter. *Inditum ore alio*, Hor. Of this kind are, *Infandus*, *nefandus*, *immetens*, *insciens*, *inultus*, *insperatus*, *inausus*, *illaudatus*, *inexpertus*, *impeiterritus*, *inhumatus*, *invocatus*, *inaratus*, *inauditus*. But those that are not form'd from Verbs, neither immediately nor mediately, however they may resemble Participles, are but Nouns: Such are, *Quadrupedans*, *viridans*, *comans*, *flammanis*, *pregnans*, *nigrans*, *lactens*, *personatus*, *bullatus*, *hastatus*, *scutatus*, *tunicatus*, *soleatus*, *togatus*, *larvatus*, *frētus*, *præditus*, *decrepitus*, *mellitus*, *pellisus*, *crinitus*, *turritus*, *cornutus*, *assus*, *cassus*, *lassus*, *lixus*, *elixus*, &c.

(3) It must be confess'd, that the Participles of the Present Tense of Verbs properly Neuters, do not end in *ing*, but signifie like Nouns Adjectives; as, *feruens* hot, *madens* wet. Neither is it exactly true, that this Participle always denotes the Present Time. It seems sometimes rather to note the time past, viz. if it be joyn'd with a Verb of the Perfect Tense; as, *Vilior hæc nobis, alio mittente, fuisset*, Martial. i. e. *si alius misisset*. *Offendi adveniens quocum volebam, atque ut volebam, collocatam filiam*, Ter. i. e. *postquam adveni*. Or it notes the time to come, if it be joyn'd with a Verb of the Future Tense; as, *Utro aq̄ cam venies indicans te amare*, Ter. i. e. *et indicabis*.

(4) Except *iens*, (a word which *Cicero* often uses) and his Compounds. It seems to have been antiently *eibam*, thence *eiens*, per *Aphæresin iens*, *Voss*. But the Genitive Case is *euntis*, Dat. *euntis*, &c. And so in all the Compounds, except *ambio*, which makes *ambientis*, &c.

(5) Yet *fiſo* and *reor* have not this Participle. *Diomedes* acknowledges *fiens*: *Sed non puto reperiri apud idoneos scriptores*, *Voss*. It is also said, That these Participles of the Present Tense are sometimes us'd Passively, to relieve the Verbs Passives, which want a Participle of the Present Tense. So *Rhenius* says, That the Participles, *Terminans*, *quassans*, *tondens*, *vehens*, *invemens*, *prætervehens*, *vertens*, *avertens*, *volvens*, are us'd; as, *Volventibus annis*, and *Volventia plaustra*, in *Virgil*. But it is better solv'd, by saying, That *ſe* is understood, as is usual after Verbs Actives: See *Chap. X. Fig. (6)*

(6) It cannot be said to be formed from the latter Supine; because many Verbs Deponents, and some Neuters, have the Participle in *rus*, that have no latter Supine; as, *Labor*, *calco*, &c. Some Participles in *rus* are form'd irregularly; viz. *Arguiturus*, *futurus*, *moriturus*, *oriturus*, *nasciturus*, *nosciturus*, *pariturus*, *sonaturus*.

(7) *Soleo* hath the First Supine, yet wants the Participle in *rus*: And so (it's said) do *cano*, *cresco*, and *obliviſcor*. On the other hand, *morior* makes *moriturus*, although it have no Supine in use.

(8) *Mortuus* is a Noun Adjective, rather than a Participle. The Participle of the Preterperfect Tense, if it be joyn'd with a Verb of the Present or Future Tense, will also follow its Signification; as, *Qui rempublicam defensam velint*, *Cic. i. e. qui defendant*. *Dabo tibi hoc effectum*; i. e. *efficiam*. This Participle is not formed from the latter Supine; for many Deponents have this Participle, that have no latter Supine; such as, *Labor*, *proficiſcor*, &c.

(9) Yet there are many Participles of the Perfect Tense coming from Deponents, that are sometimes found signifying Passively; viz. such Deponents as were antiently Communes; as, *Nunc obliſa mihi tot carmina*, *Virg.* *Parentibus abominatus Annibal*, *Hor.* *Meditata ſunt mihi omnia mea incommoda*, *Ter.* Thus also sometimes signifye, *Adeptus*, *adoratus*, *aggreſſus*, *antegreſſus*, *arbitratus*, *aſſenſus*, *auxiliatus*, *blanditus*, *comitatus*, *commentatus*, *complexus*, *conatus*, *confeſſus*, *conſolatus*, *cunctatus*, *depaſſus*, *deprecatus*, *deſpicatus*, *deſteſtatus*, *dignatus*, *dilargitus*, *eblanditus*, *effatus*, *execratus*, *executus*, *exorſus*, *expertus*, *fabricatus*, *imitatus*, *interpretatus*, *inſultus*, *lamentatus*, *menſus*, *mentitus*, *mercatus*, *meritus*, *metatus*, *moratus*, *paſſus*, *partitus*,

partitus, pollicitus, professus, stipulatus, testatus, &c. There are also many words that seem to be Participles of the Perfect Tense, that come either from the Verbs call'd Impersonals Passives, (that is, such as are seldom found save in the Third Person Singular ;) as, *Cessatus, erratus, conspiratus, &c.* Or from Verbs reckon'd amongst Neuters, or Verbs almost out of use ; such are, *Adultus, antecessus, circuitus, cœnatus, cœpius, concretus, decretus, decessus, decursus, deflagratus, defusus, emeritus, emersus, evasus, excretus, exoletus, festinatus, infervitus, interitus, inveteratus, laboratus, nuptus, obitus, obsoletus, occasus, placitus, pransus, potus, præbitus, properatus, redundatus, regnatus, requiescit, senectus, successus, titubatus, triumphatus, vigilatus.* Examples of all which see *Oxf. Gram.*

(10) It hath sometimes superadded a Signification of Necessity or Duty ; as, *Consolandus est*, he, ought to be comforted : *Pueri instruendi sunt*, Boys must be instructed. Sometimes it signifies like a Present Tense ; as, *Volvenda dies en attulit ultro*, Virg. i. e. *quæ voluitur.* *Exercenda est memoria ediscendis scriptis*, Cic. i. e. *dum ediscuntur.* Note, That *oriundus* signifies Actively, *et non habet significationem Futuri*, Voss.

(11) Yea, some that are reckon'd amongst Neuters, (viz. such as do not take *r*) have this Participle. So we read, *Carendus, dolendus, dormiendus, erubescendus, biandus, horrendus, pavendus, tremendus* ; to which may be added, *nascendus*. Also, from those commonly call'd Impersonals, we read, *Pigendus, pœnitendus, pudendus.* And frequently we find this Participle from those Verbs Neuters, that by License are us'd Actively ; as, *Clamandus, festinandus, laborandus, propterandus, regnandus, triumphandus, vigilandus, ululandus, &c.* Yet these also may as well have a Participle of the Perfect Tense. Note here, That amongst those Verbs commonly call'd Neuter-Passives, (by reason of their Passive Preterperfect Tense) *Audeo, cœno, juro, placeo, prandeo, poto*, have all the four Participles : Of *gaudeo* come *gaudens, gavisus, gavisurus* ; of *fido*, *fidens, fissus, fissurus* ; and of *suleo*, only *solens, solitus*.

(12) In general, Participles degenerate into Nouns, when they lose their Signification of Time, (as, *Oriens, occidens, diligens, serpens, sapiens, &c.*) or the Construction of the Verb that they come of ; and then they are call'd *Nouns Participials*. In particular, Participles of the Present Tense turn to Nouns, either when they have the Construction of Nouns Substantives, (viz. in *tor* or *trix* ;) as, *Ira amantium* ; *Appetens alieni* : or are compar'd ; as, *Amantior tui*. Participles of the Perfect Tense, when either they denote no Time ; (as, *Doctus sermones utriusq; linguæ*, Hor.) or when they come

from Verbs in *o*, and yet signifie Actively; as, *Attentus, cautus, circumspectus, consideratus, contentus, desertus, falsus, ignotus, notus, profusus, tacitus*, &c. Participles in *rus*, when they do not so much denote *Time*, as *Will* or *Power*; as, *Nullam mentionem fecit cometarum, non prætermisurus, si quid explorati apud illos comperisset*, Sen. i. e. He would not have omitted it. *Antoni Phario nil obesse Photino*, Martial. i. e. Who could object nothing. Participles in *us*, when either they have the Signification of the Present Tense; as, *Oratorem latinam legendis nostris efficit profectum pleniorum*, Cic. or when they do not denote *Time*, but *Duty* or *Necessity*; as, *Nec quia rex mundi comescuit ignibus ignes, Ipse suis Phaeton inficiandus erat*; i. e. Ought to have been deny'd.

(13) Such are *Inausus, inultus, inopinatus*.

(14) Participles of the Future in *rus* and *us*, are never compar'd. *Reverendissimus, colendissimus, observandissimus, recepta quidem sunt, latina non sunt*, Voss. Danel. Participles of the Present Tense are sometimes compar'd; but then they degenerate into Nouns, as having lost the Construction of their Verb. But many Participles of the Perfect Tense are compar'd; some in the Comparative Degree; as, *Cognitior*, Ovid. *Divisior*, Lucret. *Tectior, spoliator, damnator*, Cic. Some in the Superlative Degree; as, *Meritissimus, persuasissimus, laudatissimus*, Cic. *Exclusissimus, occlusissimus*, Plaut. Some in both; as, *Expectatior, expectatissimus; optatior, optatissimus; confusior, confusissimus; intricatior, intricatissimus*, Cic.

(15) So are *Armatus, armatura; cultus, cultura; præfectus, præfectura; scriptum, scriptura; usus, usura; dictum, factum*, &c.

C H A P. XL.

Of Adverbs.

AN *Adverb* is an undeclin'd Part of Speech, most commonly added to *Verbs*, sometimes to *Participles*, to *Nouns*, or to other *Adverbs*, to explain or limit their Signification. (1)

There are many sorts of *Adverbs* : The Principal sorts are of *Quantity* ; as, *longè*, far ; *latè*, far abroad ; *parùm*, little ; *sais*, enough, &c. Or of *Quality* ; as, *benè*, well ; *malè*, ill ; *fortitèr*, valiantly, &c.

All *Adverbs* may be reduc'd to one of these sorts. (2)

Of *Adverbs*, some are *Primitives* ; as, *ubi*, when ; *cras*, to morrow : Some are *Derivatives* ; as, *doctè*, learnedly ; *felicitèr*, happily. And most words that end in *ly*, are *Adverbs* deriv'd from *Adjectives*. Some are *Compounds* ; as, *hodie*, to day, of *hoc* and *die* ; *quare*, wherefore, of *quà* and *re*. (3)

Sometimes the same Word is an *Adverb* of two or more sorts. (4)

When *Prepositions* govern no Case after them, they are turn'd into *Adverbs*. Likewise *Adjectives*, especially of the Neuter Gender, are often us'd *Adverbially*. (5)

Sometimes *Verbs*, yea, and also *Nouns Substantives*, are us'd *Adverbially*. (6)

Many *Adverbs* are compar'd ; as, *diù* long, *diutius* longer, *diutissimè* very long ; *sapè* often, *sapientius* oftner, *sapientissimè* very often ; *propè* near, *propius*

pius nearer, *proxime* nearest. But especially, Adverbs deriv'd from Adjectives, are compar'd in such Degrees as the Adjectives are compar'd in. The Comparative always ends in *us*, (except *magis*); and the Superlative in *me*, (except Neuter-Adjectives, that are us'd Adverbially; as, *plurimum*); as, *docte* learnedly, *doctius* more learnedly, *doctissime* most learnedly; *fortiter* valiantly, *fortius* more valiantly, *fortissime*, most valiantly. (7)

Notes on CHAP. XL.

(1) **T**hey are undeclin'd, as to Case and Number; but yet many of them are compar'd or vary'd into Degrees. They are call'd *Adverbs*, because they are especially put to Verbs, to qualifie and circumstantiate them; especially as to Action or Passion. They are partly that to a Verb, which an Adjective is to a Substantive. Yet they are also sometimes Elegantly added to a Participle; as, *Omnino delirans*: sometimes to a Noun Adjective; as, *Satis doctus*: sometimes to a Noun Substantive; as, *Ne parum lenofies*: sometimes to another Adverb; as, *Sat citò, si sat benè*: sometimes to a Pronoun; as, *Planè nosfer*.

(2) To *Quantity* may be reduc'd all that any way note Time, Place, Number, Order, Intending, Remitting, Restraining, Excluding, Propinquity, Congregating, Separating, Imperfect Action, Speech: Under which are contain'd Affirming, Denying, Swearing, Exhorting, Doubting, Shewing, Calling, Forbidding, &c. To *Quality* may be referr'd all that denote Likeness, Comparison, Cause, Election, Prelation, Diversity, Event, &c. More particularly, 1. Adverbs of *Time*, are either of the *Time Present*; as, *Hodie, jam, nunc, modo, adhuc*: or of the *Time Past*; as, *Dudum, jamdudum, pridem, jampridem, antea, antebac, abhinc, nuper, modo, pridie, heri, nudius tertius, nudiusquartus, nudiusquintus, nudiussextus, olim, aliquando, quondam*: or of the *Time Future*; as, *Cras, perendie, postredie, mox, propediem, deinde, deinceps, dehinc, porro, postea, postbac, olim, quondam, aliquando*: or of an *Indefinite Time*; as, *Aliquando, interdum,*

interdum, subinde, quoad, unquam, nunquam, nondum, confestim, protinus, continuo, extemplo, statim, cito, subito, ætutum, repente, semper, usque, perpetuo, diu, jamdiu, aliquandiu, aliquantisper, paulisper, opportune, tempestive, quando, siquando, cum, quandoque, tum, tunc, modo, nunc, donec, domicum, &c. 2. Adverbs of Place are such as signify *In a Place*, and Answer to the Question, *Where?* as, *Hic, illic, istic, ibi, inibi, ibidem, alibi, ubi, alicubi, necubi, nuncubi, sicubi, ubiubi, ubicunque, ubique, ubilibet, ubicis, utrobique, utrinque, usquequaque, vulgo, passim, intus, foris, usquam, uspiam, nusquam, longe, peregre, superne, inferne, subitus.* Also, the Prepositions *Supra, infra, subter, ante, pone, post, propter, extra, juxta*, when they have lost their Cases: Or *From a Place*, and Answer to the Question, *Whence?* as, *Hinc, illinc, istinc, inde, indidem, aliunde, alicunde, sicunde, necunde, undeunde, undelibet, undelicet, undevis, undique, undecunque, undequaque, utrinque, eminus, cominus, intus, foris, peregre, intrinsecus, extrinsecus, forinsecus, altrinsecus, funditus, radicitus, stirpisus cælius, divinitus, humanitus, antiquitus, inferne, superne, desuper, usque:* Or *By a Place*, and Answer to the Question, *Which way, (qua?)* as, *Hac, illac, istac, quaquā, quacunque, qualibet, siqua, nequa, eadem, recta:* Or *To a Place*, and Answer to the Question, *Whither?* as, *Huc, illuc, istuc, eo, eodem, isto, illo, alio, quo, aliquo, nequo, utroque, neutro, quoquo, quocunque, quolibet, quopiam, usquam, nusquam, intro, foras, peregre, longe, ultro, citro, ulterius, porro, usque:* Or *Towards a Place*, and Answer to the Question, *Quorsum, Whitherward?* as, *Horsum, istorsum, illorsum, aliorsum, dextrorsum, sinistrorsum, levorsum, intorsum, extrorsum, retrorsum, rursus, prorsum, seorsum, sursum, deorsum, quorsum, (all Compounded with versus or versum;) pessumversus, sursumversus, deorsumversus, quoquoversus, quoqueversus, intorsus, extrorsus, susque, deque.* Note, That *peregre* and *nusquam* though they signify *Place*, yet signify variously; for we say both *Peregre absūm*, and *Peregre abeo*, and *Peregre redeo*; *Nusquam apparet*, and *Nusquam discessit*: So also, *usquam* and *longe*.

3. Adverbs of Number; as, *Semel, bis, ter, quater, quinquies, sexies, septies, octies, novies, decies, undecies, &c. vigesies or vicies, vicies semel, vicies bis, &c. trigies or tricies, quadrages, quinquages, (quinquagesies, Plaur.) sexages, septuages, octogies, nonages, centies, (antique centiens) ducenties, trecenties, quadragesies, quingies, sexcenties, septingies, octingies, nongies, millies, (antique milliens) toties or totiens, aliquoties, multoties, sæpe, raro, crebro, sæpenumero, rursus, iterum, tertium, quartum, &c.* 4. Adverbs of Quantity, Answering to the Question, *Quantum, How much?*

much ? as, *Multum, parum, pusillum, minimum, paululum, aliquantum, modicum, satis, nimis, nimum, plurimum, longe, late, profunde, alte, crasse, abunde, affatim, valde, impense, impendio, immodice, vehementer, apprime, &c.* 5. Adverbs of *Quality*, Answering to the Question, *Quomodo, How* ? as, *Ita, sic, aliter, secus, subito, vicissim, invicem, contra, susque, deque, omnino, breviter, strictim, punctim, furtim, raptim, gradatim, catervatim, &c. qualiter, qualitercunque, utcunque, bene, male, pulchre, docte, &c. fortiter, graviter, &c.* 6. Of *Likeness* ; as, *Ita, ut, uti, velut, veluti, sic, sicut, sicuti, pariter, tanquam, perinde, prout, acsi, quemadmodum, ceu, item, itidem, quasi* ; yet *quasi* of old was us'd for *ferè* ; as, *Erant quasi quatuor millia hominum.* 7. Of *Intending* ; as, *Valde, prorsus, omnino, penitus, perquam, admodum, adeo, tam, quam, magnopere, maximopere, summiopere, tantopere, toppe* (antiqu.) *vel, etiam* ; *Carmina vel cælo possunt deducere Lunam.* 8. Of *Remitting* : as, *Sensim, paulatim, pedetentim, prope, propemodum, ferme, fere, pene, egre, vix, aliquantum, quasi* : And the *Deminutives*, *Paulo, paululum, parumper, clanculum, longiuscule, breviuscule, meliuscule, sapiuscule, &c. belle, tantum, non, modo non, saltem, minimum, at, certe, vel.* 9. Of *Comparing* ; as, *Magis, minus, tam, quam, præcipue, imprimis, præsertim, tanquam, æque, perinde, proinde, and all Adverbs of the Comparative and Superlative Degree.* 10. Of *Exenuating or Mitigating* ; as, *Nimirum, videlicet, scilicet* ; as, *Id populus curat scilicet, Ter.* 11. Of *Doubting* ; as, *Utrum, an, num, ne, forsan, fortassis, fortasse, forsitan, fors* (Poet.) 12. Of *Asking* ; as, *Num, nunquid, an, utrum, nonne* and *ne* the *Enclitique*. Of *Asking concerning the Cause* ; as, *Cur, quare, quomobrem, quapropter, quidni, quin* for *curnon* : Concerning *Place* ; as, *Ubi, utribi, quo, utro, unde, quorsum* : Concerning *Time* ; as, *Quando, quoad, quousque, quamdiu* : Concerning *Number* ; as, *Quoties*, (antiqu. *quotiens*) : Concerning *Quantity* ; as, *Quantum, quantulum* : Concerning *Quality* ; as, *Quomodo, qui, qualiter* : Concerning *Degree* ; as, *Quam, quantopere* : Sometimes these words are *Indefinites or Relatives*. 13. Of *Affirming* ; as, *Ita, etiam, sic, quidem, maxime, omnino, plane, sane, certe, vere, revera, reapse, scilicet, videlicet, quippe, nã, profecto, vero, amen, nempe, nimirum, plane, prorsus, imo, equidem.* 14. Of *Denying* ; as, *Haud, non, neutiquam, nequaquam, minime, haudquaquam, nullatenus, and nihil* us'd *Adverbially* ; *ne*, with *quidem* following it, doth both *exenuate* and *deny* ; as, *Ne obulum quidem habet, unde restim emat* : Hither also belong, *Non solum, non tantum, non modo, nedum.* 15. Of *Demonstrating* ; as, *En, ecce, and hem* amongst

mongst the Comedians. 16. Of *Swearing*; as, *Ecastor, ecere, ejuno, epol, edepol, equirine, mecastor, mehercule, medius fidius*; words to be understood, but not us'd by Christians: They all come from the Greek Particles of Swearing, *μᾶ* or *μᾶ*, and *νᾶ*; and in *Latin*, are corrupted into *me* and *e*; and so signifie as much as, By *Castor*, by *Ceres*, by *Juno*, by *Pollux*, by *Quirinus*, by *Hercules*, and by *asides Filius*, (*Fidius annique pro Filius*.) But *Fidius* is us'd as a Proper Name by *Ovid*, who makes him the Son of *Jupiter*. (*Fidei presidem, ut nonnullis placet*.) Fastor. 6. He had a Temple at *Rome*, and was worship'd in *jugo Quirinali, nonis Junii. Per Deum Fidium credis jurato mihi*, Plaut. So that *Edepol* and *Ecastor* are falsly written, as if they came from *edis*. *Mecastor*, and *Mehercules*, are falsly said to be the same with *Isame Castor*, or *me Hercules juvet*, Scal. Martin. Vossius. 17. Of *Exhorting*; as, *Eya, age, agite, agedum, agitedum, quin*, with a certain Power of Correcting; as, *Quin comescitis istam vocem*, Cic. Note, That *agite* is only joyn'd to a Plural Number, but *age* to either Number: Also, That *age* is sometimes *corripientis, excitantis & consentientis*. 18. Of *Wishing*; as, *Ut, utinam, o si, sic, ut*. 19. Of *Congregating* or *Accompanying*; as, *Simul, una, pariter, collectim, summatim, gregatim*. 20. Of *Separating*; as, *Scorsum, separatim, privatim, secus, secreto, divisim, sigillatim* or *singulatim*. 21. Of *Distributing*; as, *Bipartito, bifariam, trifariam, dupliciter, tripliciter, multipliciter, &c.* 22. Of *Excluding*; as, *Solum, tantum, modo, solummodo, tantummodo, duntaxat, unice, precise*. 23. Of *Restraining*; as, *Ut, qua, quatenus, hactenus, quoad*. 24. Of *Forbidding*; as, *Ne, nequaquam, non, minime*. 25. Of *Granting*; as, *Sane, sane quidem, ilicet, licet, esto*. 26. Of *Correcting*; as, *Imo, quinimo, potius, magis, verius*. 27. Of *Order*; as, *Primo, secundo, &c. postremo, extremo, ultimo*. 28. Of *Event*; as, *Forte, fortuito, fortifortuna, incassum, frustra, inaniter*.

(3) Primitive Adverbs are but few; but the Derivatives are many. Some are deriv'd from Verbs; as, *Abunde, mordicus, &c.* some from Participles; as, *Cunctanter, raptim, exultatim*: some from Pronouns; as, *Hic, illic, istic, &c.* some from Prepositions; as, *Intrò, subtrò, clanculum*: but many more from Nouns, either Substantives or Adjectives. They are Compounded sometimes of Two words; as, *Tantopere, sapenumerò*: sometimes of Three; as, *Quamobrem, quemadmodum, nudius tertius, nudius quartus, &c.* i. e. *Nunc dies tertius, quartus, &c.*

(4) So *Ubi, ibi, hactenus, usque*, are both of Time and Place; *tam* of Intending and Comparing; *ita* and *sic* of Quality, Likeness,

ness, Intending, or Affirming ; and many like : But especially, *ut* is Multiform. It is sometimes an Adverb of Likeness ; as, *Ut homo est, ita morem geras* : Of Quality, for *quomodo* ; as, *Ut semper tibi apud me iusta & clemens fuerit servitus scis* : Of Time, for *postquam* ; as, *Ut primum cessit furor viri* : Of Intending, with Admiration, for *quàm* ; as, *Ut te fortissime Teucrum Accipio, agnoscoque libens* ! Virg. Of Asking, for *quomodo* ; as, *Ut valde, ut meministi nostri* ? Of Wishing, for *utinam* ; as, *Ut illum dii deaque omnes perdant* !

(5) Many Neuter Adjectives of the Singular Number, are us'd Adverbially ; such as, *Multum, solum, tantum, aeternum, longum, modicum, commodum, pusillum, torvum, affabre, impune, difficile, sublimè, recens, &c.* Some of the Plural Number, in imitation of the Greeks ; so we read *Acerba tuens, Crebra ferit*, Luc. for *acerbè* and *crebrò*. Some Adjectives of the Feminine Gender are us'd Adverbially, their Substantives being understood : So *Una, subaud. operâ* ; *Hac, illac, istac, siqua, nequa, quacunque, eadem, recta, sub. viâ*. And indeed, those Masculine Adjectives, *Quò, aliquò, quocunque, primò, secundò, &c. ultimò postremò*, although they are us'd Adverbially, have the Substantive *loco* understood to them all, and are not properly Adverbs.

(6) Sometimes Verbs are us'd Adverbially ; so are *Amabo, age, agite, vale, cedo, licet, esto* : And so are *Sis, sodes, subis*, for *Si vis, si audes, si vultis* ; even as *Gapsis, cavefis, videfis, agefis, &c.* Some Nouns Substantives seem to be us'd Adverbially ; as, *Pax, atatem, mane, tempori, luci, vesperi*.

(7) As *Diu, diutius* ; so *Valdè, valdiùs* ; *serò, seriùs* ; *satis, satius* ; *secus, seciùs* ; *tempori, temporius*, without Superlatives : *Pene, penissimè* ; *nuper, nuperrimè*, without Comparatives : Yea, some want the Positive ; as, *Magis, maximè* ; *ocius, ocissimè* ; *potius, potissimùm*.

C H A P. XLI.

Of Conjunctions.

A *Conjunction* is an undeclin'd Part of Speech, which joyneth Words to Words, and Sentences to Sentences. (1)

The Principal sorts of *Conjunctions*, are *Copulatives* and *Disjunctives*. *Copulatives* joyn both Words and Sense; as, *Et, que, ac, atque, tum*, and; *nec, neque*, neither. *Disjunctives* joyn Words, but disjoyn the Sense; as, *Aut, vel, seu, sive*, or.

All the rest may be reduc'd to one of these sorts. (2)

The Signification of Conjunctions is oftentimes much a-kin to Adverbs.

The same Word may be a Conjunction of two or more sorts: Yea, and upon different Considerations, may be both an Adverb and a Conjunction. (3)

Amongst the Conjunctions, *Ac, ast, at, atque, aut, vel, neque, nam, nec, si, nisi, sin, quin, quatenus, seu, sive, verum*, and *quare*, are commonly set before in a Sentence. But *Autem, quidem, quoque, vero, enim*, and the Enclitiques, *Que, ne, ve*, (which are always annexed to the end of the foregoing Word) are always set after some other Word in the Sentence. All the rest are plac'd indifferently, sometimes before, and sometimes after. (4)

Notes on CHAP. XLI.

(1) **A**LL Conjunctions indeed, in their Signification, are Copulative ; but these are simply and strictly call'd *Copulatives*, because they couple the Sense, without any Disjunction, Causality, or Ratiocination. If we say, That Conjunctions do only joyn Sentences together, and not properly Words, we must always allow an *Ellipsis* ; which is hard to be understood by Children.

(2) To *Copulatives* may be reduc'd the Causals, Conditionals, Conclusives, Adversatives, Continuatives : To *Disjunctives* may be reduc'd, Discretives, Exceptives, Electives, &c. But more particularly, Conjunctions are, 1. *Copulatives*, which couple both Words and Sense ; such are, *Et, que, quoque, ac, atque, item, etiam, neu, neve, nec, neque*, (which two last deny both the Things spoken of) *cum, tum*, and also *tum* doubled ; as, *Tum doctus tum pius*. When *tum* answers *cum*, it encreases the Signification ; as, *Cum omnes lyricos, tum præcipue Horatium*. 2. *Disjunctives* ; which joyn the Words, but disjoyn the Sense ; such are, *Aut, seu, sive, ve, vel, sed* ; as, *Seu boni, seu mali*. 3. *Explanatives* ; which explain the foregoing Word or Phrase ; such are, *Scilicet, videlicet, nimirum, nempe, puta, utpote, ut* ; and sometimes, *Seu, sive, vel, et, que*. 4. *Concessives* ; which grant something, which the following Sentence may seem to oppose ; such are, *Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi, quanquam, quamvis, licet, at, quidem, equidem, sanè*. 5. *Adversatives* ; which lay down a Sense different from the former ; such are, *Sed enim, tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verum enimvero*. 6. *Causals* ; which render a Reason of the former Sentence ; such are, *Nam, namque, enim, etenim, quia, quoniam, quando, quandoquidem, siquidem, quod, quippe, ideo, propterea, postquam, ut, ne, quin*, and also *quo* for *quod* ; as, *Non quo quicquam desit, sed quia valde cupio*, Cic. 7. *Conclusives, or Illatives, or Ratiocinatives* ; which infer a Conclusion from Premises ; such are, *Ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, quapropter, proinde, quamobrem, itaque, quare, quocirca, usque*. 8. *Conditionals* ; which determine the Sentence upon Condition ; such are, *Si, sin, ni, nisi, siquidem, modo, dum, dummodo, quodsi, quoad, quatenus, alioqui, cateroqui, alias*. Hither may be referr'd those call'd *Exceptives* ; which except something from the foregoing Sentence ; as, *Ut, præterquam, extraquam*. 9. *Electives* ; which signify, that the former Member of the Sentence is to be preferr'd and chosen ; such are, *Quam, ac, atque* : as, *Malo conscientiam quam scientiam* ;

scientiam ; Virtutem quam opes. 8. *Continuatives* ; which continue and connect the Members of a Sentence in a certain Order ; such are, *Primum, deinde, praterea, tum, item, insuper, denique, porro, postremo, caterum, adhoc, adbac, &c.* which are also reckon'd amongst Adverbs of Order. 11. *Compleatives* ; which are us'd only for Ornament, or filling up, where there is no need of their Signification ; such are, *Nam, ergo, igitur, quidem, equidem, sane, dum* : as, *Mihine ? Tibi ergo. Adesdum. Nam quis te juvenum confidentissime nostras Fuisse adire domos ?* Virg. *Nam qua est hac anus, qua à fratre egressa est meo ?* Except we allow a Transposition, for *quisnam*, and *quenam*, Serv. When Copulatives or Disjunctives are doubled, the former Particle is call'd *Suspensiva* ; because it suspends the Mind, in expectation of another Particle of the same Value, or the same again ; as, *Et fugit & pugnat. Mihi istic nec seritur nec metitur. Vel scribit, vel distat.*

(3) So *seu* and *sive* once express'd, are *Explanatives* ; as, *Diana sive Luna* : But when they are doubled, they are *Disjunctives* ; as, *Seu boni, seu mali. Sed* is both a *Disjunctive*, and an *Adversative*. *Et* and *que* are *Copulatives* ; but they are sometimes us'd as *Explanatives* ; as, — *Manet altâ mente repòsum Fudicium Paridis spreteque injuria forma* ; where *que* is as much as *nimirum*. *Ut* is an Adverb of several sorts, (see Chap. XL.) and it is also a Conjunction, either *Causal* ; as, *Rogo ut facias*, I pray that thou wouldst do this : or *Concessive*, for *quamquam* ; as, *Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas*, Although Strength be wanting, &c. or *Explanative*, the same with *Exempli gratiâ*. *Quam* is both an Adverb of *Intending* and *Comparing*, and also a Conjunction *Elective*. *Quare* and *quamobrem* are Adverbs of *Asking*, and also Conjunctions *Conclusive*. *Cum* is an Adverb of *Time*, and also a Conjunction *Copulative* and *Causal*. *Tum* is an Adverb of *Time*, and a Conjunction *Copulative* and *Continuative*, &c.

(4) Yet we read *enim* in the beginning of a Sentence rarely ; *Enim istac capto est*, Plaut. When *que* couples two words, it is most Elegantly plac'd after the latter ; yet sometimes we find it hanging upon the former ; as, *Messalam terrâ dum sequiturque mari, Castaneasque nuces*, Virg. For *Castanea* is a Substantive, Plin.

C H A P. XLII.

Of Prepositions.

A *Preposition* is an undeclin'd Part of Speech, naturally governing a Case; and is usually set before that Case. (1)

There are three kinds of *Prepositions*: Some are us'd only in Apposition; as, *Ad, apud, erga*: Some both in Apposition and Composition; as, *In, per, ante*: Some in Composition only; which are, *An, am, di, dis, ne, re, se, ve, con*. These last are call'd *Prepositions*, because they are set before other Words in Composition, though they govern no Case. (2)

The true and proper *Prepositions* that govern a Case, are Six and twenty that govern an Accusative Case, Fourteen that govern an Ablative, and Five that govern both. And all those, when they are in Composition, do commonly keep their own Natural Signification; as, *adeo*, I go to; *ab eo*, I go from. (3)

Those that govern an Accusative Case, are, (4)

Ad, to and at; as, *Ad astra*, to the Stars; *Ad manum*, at hand; *Ad fores*, at the Door. (5)

Apud, at, with and before; as, *Apud hanc aedem*, at this House; *Coenabis apud me*, thou shalt sup with me; *Apud Judicem*, before the Judge. (6)

Adversus or *adversum*, against and towards; as, *Adversum Lupos*, against the Wolves; *Adversum te*, towards thee. (7)

Ante, before. (8)

Cis or *citra*, on this side and without; as, *Cis montes*,

res, on this side the Mountains ; *Citra auctoritatem Senatûs*, without the Authority of the Senate. (9)

Circum or *circa*, about, both as to *Time* and *Place* ; as, *Circa eum mensem*, about that Month ; *Circa solum Tiburis*, about the Soyl of *Tibur*. (10)

Contra, against and over-against ; as, *Contra latrones*, against Thieves ; *Contra Italiam*, over-against *Italy*.

Erga, towards ; as, *Erga Dominum*, towards the Master.

Extra, without and beside ; as, *Extra muros*, without the Walls ; *Nemo extra te*, no one beside thee. (11)

Infra, beneath ; as, *Infra Cælum*, underneath Heaven.

Inter, between or among, at or amidst ; as, *Inter os & offam*, between the Mouth and Morsel ; *Inter cenam*, at Supper. (12)

Intra, within ; as, *Intra tentoria*, within the Tents. (13)

Juxta, nigh ; as, *Juxta equora*, nigh the Seas. (14)

Ob, for and before ; as, *Ob stultitiam*, for my folly ; *Ob oculos*, before my Eyes.

Penes, in the Power and Possession ; as, *Me penes*, in my Power ; *Bona omnia adsunt ; quem penes est virtus*, he possesseth all good things, who possesseth Virtue. (15)

Per, by or through ; as, *Per Mare*, through the Sea. (16)

Pone, behind ; as, *Pone caput*, behind the head. (17)

Post, after and behind ; as, *Post annum*, after a Year ; *Post fanum*, behind the Temple. It denotes Order also ; as, *Virtus post nummos*, after Money.

Præter, beside or except, and beyond ; as, *Omnes præter unum*, all but one ; *Præter casam*, beyond the Cottage. (18)

Propter, for or because of; as, *Aliquid malum est propter vicinum malum*, some evil because of a Neighbouring evil. (19)

Secundum, according to and near to; as, *Secundum facta*, according to his Deeds; *Vulnus secundum aurem*, a Wound by the Ear. (20)

Secus, by or nigh to; as, *Secus viam*, by the way.

Supra, above and beyond; as, *Supra caput*, over his Head; *Supra fidem*, beyond belief.

Trans, on the further side; as, *Trans Mare*, over the Sea.

Ultra, beyond; as, *Ultra Oceanum*, beyond the Ocean.

Those that govern an Ablative Case only, are,

A, *ab*, *abs*, from or by; as, *Ibat à Tenedo*, he went from *Tenedos*; *Landatur ab his*, he is commended by these. (21)

De, from and concerning; as, *Audiui de Davo*, I heard from *Davus*; *Dixit de senectute*, he spoke concerning Old Age. (22)

E, *ex*, of, out of, and from; as, *Laborat è morbo*, he is sick of a Disease; *Mensa ex auro*, a Table of Gold; *Ex illo tempore*, from that time. (23)

Absque, without; as, *Absque te*, without thee.

Cum, with; as, *Cum nobis*, with us, or *nobiscum*. (24)

Coram, in Presence; as, *Coram nobis*, before us, in our Presence.

Palam, openly; as, *Palam populo*, openly before the People.

Sine, without; as, *Sine morâ*, without delay.

Præ, before, by reason of, in comparison of; as, *Præ se fert*, he carryeth before him; *Præ lachrymis non possum scribere*, I cannot write for tears; *Contempsit illum*

illum præ me, I despised him in comparison of my self. (25)

Pro, for and instead of; as, *Pro istis dictis*, for those Speeches; *Sum pro prætor*, I am in stead of the Pætor. (26)

Tenus, up to or until; as, *Capulo tenus*, up to the Hilt. (27)

Those that govern both Accusative and Ablative,
are,

In, into and in; as, *In urbem*, into the City; *In urbe*, in the City. (28)

Sub, a little before and under; as, *Sub cœnam*, a little before Supper; *Sub Jove frigido*, under the cold Air. (29)

Subter, under; as, *Subter terram* or *terrâ*, under the Earth.

Super, upon; above, and beyond; as, *Super æthera* or *æthere*, above the Sky; *Super fronde*, upon a Leaf; *Super Indos*, beyond the Indians. (30)

Clam or *clanculum*, privily; as, *Clam virum* or *viro*, unawares to her Husband.

Prepositions losing their Case, become Adverbs. (31)

Some Prepositions in Composition govern the same Case as they do in Apposition; as, *Circumspexit agmina*, he look'd round about upon the Troops; *Præterii villam*, I pass by the Farm-house; *Insiliit ardentem Ætnam*, he leapt into burning Ætna. (32)

Sometimes Prepositions are redundant in a Sentence; as, *Præscire ante*, to fore-know before. (33)

But especially note, That many Prepositions are commonly omitted in a Sentence, and yet the Noun is govern'd of them so understood. (34)

Notes on CHAP. XLII.

(1) **B** *Reverissima & verissima definitio*, Voss. For it is an old Error, that either Adverbs or Interjections do govern any Case. The Case that seems oftentimes to depend upon them, depends indeed upon some Preposition, or other word understood, *Voss* and *Oxf. Gram.* *Tenus* is always set after the casual Word; *penes* often; and *cum* usually after *me*, *te*, *se*, *quo*, and their Plurals. The Poets take the same Liberty in many others.

(2) *An* and *am* seem to be the same; so do *di* and *dis*; and *con* a corruption of *cum*. *Am* or *ambe* (found in *Varro*) of *ἀμψι*, is found in Apposition; *Am terminum*, *Cato*. From *Ambe*, are, *Ambages*, *ambedo*, *ambio*, *amburo*: From *Am*, (the Contraction of it) are, *Amplector*, *amicio*, (q. *amjicio*.) And again, this *m* is often turn'd into *n*; as in *anceps*, *anfractus*, *ambelo*, *anquiro*, &c. *Di* is a corruption of *dis*, from *dis*; as, *διαρίσσει differo*, *διαγινώσκω dignosco*, *διαλύω diluo*. It denotes Division into two Parts; as in *difseco*: or signifies Negation; as in *diffido*, *difficilis*, *dissimilis*: or Diversity; as, *dissentio*: or Augmentation; as in *discupio*, *discrucior*, i. e. *valde cupio*, *crucior*. *Ne* denotes Privation; as in *nefas*, *nefastus*, *nefrens*: and it is always short in Verse, whereas the Adverb is always long; as in *nequaquam*, &c. *Re* denotes as much as *rursus*, again; as, in *relego*, *repeto*: *Contra*, against; as in *resisto*, *repugno*: *Reversum*, backward; as in *respicio*: *Longe*, afar; as in *remoto*: And it often denotes the contrary to the signification of the Simple; as in *recludo*, *retero*, *revelo*, &c. When it is compounded with a word that begins with a Vowel, it takes *d* to help the Sound; as in *redigo*, *redeo*, *redamo*, &c. *Se* signifies *seorsum*, asunder; as in *secedo*: Sometimes it denotes Privation; as in *securus*, i. e. *sine curis*: And in Composition sometimes changes *e* into *o*; as in *socors*, *sobrius*. *Ve* denotes Privation, or at least Deminution; as in *vesanus*, *vegrandis*, *vecors*, *vejovis*, a mischievous Deity. *Con* denotes Conjunction, the same with *simul* or *cum*; as, *conjungo*, *connecto*, *compono*. It suffers many Alterations in Composition; but especially, it loses *n* before a word that begins with a Vowel; as in *coalesco*, *coeo*, *coincido*.

(3) *Ad* in Composition sometimes encreases the Signification; as in *admiror*, *adamo*. In compounded with a Noun, or a Participle whose Verb cannot be compounded with it, commonly denotes Privation; as, *iniquus*, *indolens*: Yet sometimes it encreases the Signification; as, *Infrahaque consistit ira*; that is, *valde fracta*,

Ovid,

Ovid. *Per* encreases the Signification, as in *pervigil*: Yet sometimes it denotes Privation, as in *perfidus*, *perjurus*, i. e. *fiat fide & jure*. *Sub* lessens the Signification, as in *subrufus*, *subtristis*. *De* and *ex* in Nouns denote Privation, as in *demens*, *exanguis*; but in Verbs they encrease it, as in *deamo*, *exclamo*. And although *de* signifies from; yet some Compounds denote Motion to a Place or Person; as, *deduco*, *defero*. Prepositions in Composition undergo many Changes in their Letters, for better Sound's sake; as may appear in *Ascendo*, *acquirō*, *appono*, *intelligo*, *occurro*, *aggannio*, *omitto*, *ostendo*, *pelluceo*, *pejero*, *traduco*, *tramo*, *aufero*, *compono*, *colligo*, *corrigo*, *coemo*, *effundo*, *impono*, *illudo*, *succurro*, *suffero*, &c.

(4) To these are commonly added, *Circiter*, *prope*, *versus*, and *usque*; because an Accusative Case is sometimes found joyn'd to them. But indeed, they are Adverbs, and that Accusative Case is not govern'd of them, but of the Preposition *ad* understood: And this is evident, in that the Preposition *ad* is sometimes express'd; as, *Ad meridiem versus*, Liv. *In forum versus*, Cic. *Ab ovo usque ad mala*, Ter. *Prope* can no more pretend to govern an Accusative Case, than *propius* and *proxime*; for we read, *Propius urbem movent*, Cic. and, *Proximè Hispaniam Mauri sunt*, Sall. *Proximus Pompeium sedebam*, Cic. And when we find *Circiter meridiem*, there is an Ellipsis of the Preposition *ad*, for *ad meridiem*. We read also, *Prope à domo*, Gouldm. Dict. and, *Circiter in mediâ arce*, Cal. *Hemina*, *citante Calepino*.

(5) The most usual Significations only of the Prepositions, are set down; but many of them are sometimes found signifying many other ways: As *ad* sometimes also signifies, *Near to*; as, *Habes libros ad Tyberim*, Cic. *Against*; as, *Ruta bibitur ad peccoris dolorem*, Plin. *Nihil aequè facit ad vipera morsum, quam taxi arboris succus*, Suet. *According to*; as, *Ad vulgi opinionem*, Cic. for *secundum*. *For*, denoting the impulsive Cause; as, *Panditur ad nullas janua nigra preces*, Propert. where it is the same with, *propter*. *In comparison of*; as, *Nihil ad nostram hanc*, Ter. *About*, as relating both to Number and Time; as, *Frequentes fuimus ad ducentos*, Cic. *Ad quæ tempora te expectem*, Id. *Towards*; as, *Ad meridiem spectans*, Cic. *After*; as, *Utrum nunc veniam, an ad decem annos*, Cic. *Before*; as, *Senatores stare ad pedes passus est Caligula*, Sueton. *Besides*; as, *Ad hæc mala hæc mihi accedit etiam*, Ter. Sometimes it denotes *Similitude*; as, *Mandavit ad illam faciem, mulierem emerem sibi*, Plaut. *Generality*; as, *Omnes ad unum idem sentiunt*, Cic. *The shortness of Time*; as, *Fingere ad tempus videbor*, Quint. *Duration of Time, or untill*; as, *Nebula erat ad multum diei*, Liv.

(6) *Apud* signifies sometimes *By*; as, *Hofis apud majores nostros dicebatur, quem nunc peregrinum dicimus*, Cic. *In*; as, *Apud seculum prius*, Ter. *Ego sic apud animum meum statuo*, Sall. *Befide*, or *nigh to*; as, *Apud eum Crassus sederet*, Cic.

(7) *Adversus* or *adversum* signifie not only *Towards* a Person, (the same with *erga*); as, *Adversus infimos justitia est servanda*, Cic. but also in the Sense of *versus*; as, *Vestigia omnia spectantia adversum te*, Hor. Sometimes, *Over-against*; as, *Lerina adversum Antipolim*, Plin. Sometimes, *To*, the same with *ad* or *apud*; as, *Aut me aliquid de illâ adversum hunc loqui*, Ter.

(8) *Ante*, before, both as to Time and Place; as, *Ante diem*, before Day; *Ante focum*, before the Fire: It notes also *Excess*; as, *Ante alios scelere immanior omnes*, Virg.

(9) *Cis* signifies *On this side* also, in respect of Time; as, *Cis paucos dies*, Plaut. *Without*, (the same with *sine*); as, *Citra Senatûs populique auctoritatem*, Sueton. *Beneath*; as, *Ede citra crudelitatem, bibe citra ebrietatem*, Sen. *Before*, (*ante* or *extra*); as, *Solebat etiam citra spectaculorum dies*, &c. Sueton.

(10) Sometimes as to Number also; as, *Circa decem lustra*, about ten Lustres, or fifty Years. *Concerning*; as, *Varia circa hæc opinio*, Plin. *With*, (*apud*); as, *Turba erat circa eum*, Curt. *In*; as, *Animus est circa virescentes campos*, Hor.

(11) Also, *Without*, (*sine*); as, *Extra jocum*, Cic. It denotes also *Exclusion*; as, *Extra alcæm positus*, past all danger, Plin.

(12) Sometimes it denotes *Society*, and signifies *Amongst*; as, *Inter æquales equites*, Hor. *Mutually*, (*invicem ad*); as, *Conversique oculos inter se atque ora ferebant*, Virg. *Number*; as, *Numerantur inter reges*.

(13) Sometimes, *Into*; as, *Intra tellâ vocat*, Virg. Sometimes it signifies as much as *Not exceeding*, (*non ultra*); as, *Modice hoc faciam, aut etiam intra modum*, Cic. *Intra spem veniæ cautus*, Hor. *Ex phreneticis, alii intra verba desipiunt*, Celsus.

(14) Sometimes, *Together with*, (*simul*); as, *Cum faceret juxta ancillas lanam*, Var. *Next after*; as, *Nigidius juxta Varronem doctissimus*, Gell.

(15) Sometimes, *With*, (*apud*); as, *Istæc jam penes vos psalteria est*, Ter. *In*; as, *Culpa videatur penes patrem*, Quintil.

(16) Sometimes it is referr'd to Time; as, *Sexies per annum*, Plin. Sometimes it denotes *Means* or *Instrument*; as, *Per literas tecum colloquar*, Cic. *Simulation*; as, *Per speciem venandi*, Liv. *Oligestation* and *Swearing*; as, *Quod ego per hanc te dextram oro, & gemum tuum*, Ter. *Per caput hoc juro*, Virg. *Cause*, *Impediment*, or

or *Concession* ; as, *Neque per atalem etiam potuerat*, Ter. *Hoc neque per naturam fas est, neque per leges licet*, Cic. *Quum per tempus licet, per me vel stertas licet*, Id. *Solitude* ; as, *Reliqua per nos agemus* : *Hoc per me didici dicere*, *Caesar ave*, Mart. Sometimes *To* or *For* ; as, *Hoc non erit per contumeliam ulli famina*, Suet. *Per ludum & jocum*, Cic. Sometimes *In* ; as, *Visus erat per quietem matri stuprum intulisse*, Suet. *Non potuisti per tempus magis advenire quam nunc advenis*, Plaut.

(17) This Preposition is so rare, that *Martinius* makes it an Adverb. *Secus* also is rare, and not to be us'd by an *Elegant Latinist*, though *Pliny* and *Fabius* do use it, *Oxf. Gram.*

(18) Also, *Against* ; as, *Præter civium morem atque legem, & sui voluntatem patris*, Ter. *Above* ; as, *Erat formâ præter cæteras honestâ*, Id. *Before* ; as, *Præter oculos Lollia hæc omnia ferebant*, Cic.

(19) Also, *Nigh* ; as, *Propter aquæ vicum*, Virg. *Interdum propter dormiam*, Ter.

(20) Also, *Next after* ; as, *Secundum fratrem illis plurimum tribuebat*, Cic. *For* ; as, *Multa secundum causam nostram disputavit*, Id. *In* ; as, *Cujus imago secundum quietem sibi versata sit*, Sueton. It is often the same with the Greek *κατά*, *According to*, *As to* ; as, *Ut deliberetis secundum ea*, Sallust. *Secundum consuetudinem sæpe dixi*, Quintil.

(21) Also, *After* ; as, *A prandio, A cænâ, A tergo*. *For*, or *In favour of* ; as, *Nemo à Senatu stetit constantius*, Cic. *As to*, (*quantum ad*) ; as, *Sumus imparati cum à militibus, tum à pecunia*, Id. *Against* ; as, *Teneros defendo à frigore myrtos*. Sometimes they signify the same with *De* ; as, *A villâ mercenarium vidi* : and with *Ex* ; as, *Crimine ab uno disce omnes*. *A*, or *Ab*, set before a Noun of Office, Service, or Dignity, signifies the Person that discharges that Office or Service ; as, *Super hos Polybium à studiis, Narcissum ab epistolis, & Pallantem à rationibus* ; i. e. *præceptorem, scribam, quæstorem*, Sueton. Thus ; *A libellis, A consiliis, A secretis, A cyathis, A pedibus, A manibus*, &c.

(22) Also, *Of*, or *Out of* ; as, *Templum de marmore ponam*, Virg. *Non de plebe Deus*, Ovid. *For* ; as, *Ecquid nos amas de fidicinâ istac*, Ter. *Gravi de causâ*, Cic. *According to* ; as, *Qui de sua unius sententiâ omnia gerit, superbus est, non sapiens*, Liv. *As concerning* ; as, *De uxore nihil mutat Chremes*, Ter. Sometimes it denotes *Time* ; as, *Vigilas de nocte*, Cic.

(23) Also, *After* ; as, *Aliud ex alio malum*. *According to* ; as, *Vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa aestimat*, Cic. So *Ex*

voto; *Ex animi sententiâ*, &c. By, as the Efficient Cause; as, *Gravida è Pamphilo*, Ter. They denote Motion from or out of a place; as, *Exire ex urbe consul hostem jubet*. Of or amongst; as, *Tu ex amicis certis mihi es certissimus*, Plaut. By, as the Instrumental Cause; as, *Intelligo ex tuis literis*: *Quantum ex vultu ejus intelligo*, Cic. Sometimes they denote the Original of a thing; as, *Fuere, qui è thuris arbore utrumque nasci mentirentur*, Plin. Sometimes, *Profit*; as, *Ex re tuâ, ut opinor, feceris*, Plaut. And sometimes, a Fault or Vice in the Subject; as, *Dixit se in loco esse, quod ex pedibus laborares*, Cic.

(24) *With* denotes Society, an Instrument, or the Mode of an Action: *Cum* signifies all these; but is rarely, if at all, found with an Instrument.

(25) In this Sense, *quam* and *ut* are sometimes joyn'd to it, and then it becomes an Adverb; as, *Præut bujus rabies quæ dabis*, Ter.

(26) Also, *Before*; as, *Pro eâ Castoris sedens*, Cic. *Religato pro foribus cane*, Sueton. According to, or In respect of; as, *Pro dignitate cuique tribuuntur, pro opinione vulgi*, Cic. *Duo talenta pro re nostrâ decrevi esse satis*, Ter. Thus; *Pro virili, pro merito*. In; as, *Hac re pro suggestu nunciâtâ*, Cæf. *Defunctum laudavit è more pro rostris*, Sueton. It denotes also, Defence; as, *Pro Trojâ stabat Apollo*: And sometimes it is explain'd by *Tanquam*; as, *Quod judicatum non sit, pro infecto haberi oportet*, Cic. Thus; *Pro comperto, pro explorato, pro certo, pro concessò*, &c.

(27) And so in the Plural Number; as, *Pectoribus tenus*, Ovid. *Inguinibus tenus*, Celsus. It signifies as much as *non ultra*: So, *Consulatum gessit titulo tenus*; i. e. *non ultra titulum*: *Verbo tenus*, only in word. *Tenus* is also found with an Accusative Case; as, *Et Tanais tenus immenso descendit ab Euro*, Flaccus in Argo. citante Calpurnio. As for the Genitive Case Plural, that is frequently joyn'd with *tenus*, it is suppos'd to be govern'd of some Substantive understood, (*sine*, or *parte*;) which Substantive doth lie hid in *hâtenus* and *quâtenus*; and then *tenus* its self is an Adverb; which is no new thing; *Est quoddam prodire tenus*, Hor. Some add to these, *simul* and *procul*; because an Ablative Case is often found joyn'd to them, without a Preposition: But that Ablative is indeed govern'd of the Preposition *cum* or *à*; which Prepositions also are frequently express'd.

(28) *In* governs an Accusative Case, when it signifies *Into*; as, *Via ducis in urbem*, Virg. (Yet we read, *Introrumpam in adibus*, Plaut.) Towards; as, *Accipit in Teu'ros animum, mentemque benignam*,

nigrum, Id. *Against* ; as, *Quid meus Aeneas in te committere tantum*, &c. Id. *Unto* ; as, *Natus in miseriam*, Cic. *For* ; as, *Sua illi in legem aeternam voluntas*, Id. *Throughout* ; as, *Crescit in dies singulos hostium numerus*, Id. *Over* ; as, *Reges in ipsos imperium est Jovis*, Hor. *Amongst* ; as, *Spargere voces in vulgum ambiguas*, Virg. *Until* ; as, *In lucem semper Acerra bibit*, Mart. In governs an Ablative Case, when it signifies *in* ; as, *Spes me solatur in istis*, Ovid. (Yet we read also, *Mibi in mentem fuit*, Plaut. *Argumenta in pectus multa inieci*, Id. *Ubi vidit me esse in tantum bonorem*, Ter.) When it signifies *Upon*, or *Amongst*, or *Before*, it governs an Accusative, or an Ablative indifferently ; as, *Dormit in aurem* ; *Sedet in folio* ; *Amicitia non est nisi in bonis* ; *Homines morie deletos reponere in Deos*, Cic. *Vereor in os laudare*, Ter. *In oculis duo navigia submersa sunt*, Cæf. Of old time, instead of *in*, they us'd *indu* or *endo* ; as, *Indu mari*, Lucr. *Endo calo*, Cic. Hence remain *endoperator* or *induperator*, for *imperator* ; *industrius ab instruendo* ; *inducia q. indu ocio*, &c.

(29) It signifies also, *A little after* ; as, *Sub eas litera tue statim recitate sunt*, Cic. Also, *By*, (*per*) ; as, *Sub noctem cura recurfat : Visa sub obscurum noctis*, Virg. When it implies any Motion, it governs an Accusative Case ; as, *Postesque sub ipsa Nituntur gradibus* : But without any Motion, an Ablative ; as, *At illum sub pedibus Styx atra videt*, Virg. *Sub iudice lis est*, Hor.

(30) *Super* governs an Accusative Case, when it signifies *Beyond*, *Beside*, or *Amongst* ; as, *Super bina sestertia dedit*, Sueton. *Super bellum annonæ premente*, Liv. In *sermone nato super cænam*, Sueton. Yet when it signifies *Beyond*, as to Time, it sometimes governs an Ablative ; as, *Nocte super mediâ*, Virg. But when in its most Natural Sense, it signifies *Upon*, it governs either an Accusative or Ablative indifferently ; as, *Sæva sedens super arma*, Virg. *Fronde super viridi sunt nobis mitia poma*, Id.

(31) Such are, *Ante*, *circa*, *clam*, *coram*, *contra*, *infra*, *intra*, *juxta*, *palam*, *pone*, *post*, *propter*, *secus*, *subter*, *supra*, *super*, *tenus*, *ultra*. *Juxta mecum rem tenes*, Plaut. *Vultu adeo modesto, ut nihil supra*, Ter. *Vasa intra diligenter picata*, Colum. *Affidue lego, nihil ultra faciens*. Or if they be compounded with Adverbs, or other Prepositions ; as, *Postquam*, *desursum*, *desubito*, *derepente*, *exinde*, *abusque*, *dehinc*, *inibi*, *insimul* ; *circumcirca*, *inante*, *exante*, *praterpropter*. But some write *inante*, and *exante*, in distinct Words ; and make them to signify, *Unto*, or *From that Day*, Vossius.

(32) Yet many Verbs compounded with Prepositions, do govern a dis-

a different Case from those Prepositions ; as, *Exire regnum ; Convenire hominem* : Especially, Verbs compounded with *Præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter,* and *super,* love to have a Dative Case after them ; yet not always.

(33) *A, ab, ad, cum, de, e, ex,* are often repeated after Verbs that are compounded with them ; which seems to be needless, yet is Elegant ; as, *Qui ad nos interpestivè adeunt,* Cic. *Nihil non consideratum exibat ex ore,* Id.

(34) *A* and *Ab* are understood before Proper Names of Great Places, when they answer to the Question, (*Unde,*) *From whence ?* as also, before *domo* and *rure.* And this is the most usual and Elegant way of speaking ; as, *Ægypto remeans ; Susis veni ; Abiit domo ; Rure reversus est.* This is now so usual, that *Quintilian* says, It is a Solecism to say, *De Susis veni.* But certainly, the Preposition is always intended, and the Noun is govern'd of it, though understood : for we often find it express'd in the best Authors. So we find, *Brutus ab Româ aberat,* Sall. *Auxilia venerant ab Lavinio,* Liv. And *Cicero* speaks thus frequently. *Suctorius* says, That *Augustus Caesar* was wont always to speak thus. — Also, when they come before Nouns or Verbs that denote *Cause, Instrument, Punishment,* or the like ; as, *Pallidus irâ ; Gladio percussus ; Capite plerere,* &c. — Also, before Nouns that denote Time, when they signify *After ;* as, *Rediit hoste superato ;* i. e. *Postquam superaverat hostem.* This is call'd the *Ablative Case Absolute.* — Also, when *Difference* or *Distance* is noted ; as, *Stulto intelligens quid interest ? Abest virtute illius ; Paulo intervallo illum superat.* — Also, when *Part* of a thing is signify'd ; as, *Animo otiosus ; Multis rebus melior.* — Also, after *Natus, prognatus, factus,* and the like ; as, *Fove natus.* — And indeed, amongst the Poets, almost at any time, when they signify *From ;* as, *Fuppiter æthere summo Despiciens : Stridens Aquilone procella : Imo Nervus ciet æquora ponto,* Virg. *Fuppiter arce sua totum cum spectat in orbem,* Ovid.

Ad is usually understood before Proper Names of Great Places, when they Answer to the Question, *Whither ?* or before *domum* and *rurus ;* as, *Eo Romam ; Profectus est Athenas ; Ite domum.* And, amongst the Poets especially, usually before Regions and Islands, and other Nouns that denote *Place ;* such as, *Villa, ager, forum, mons,* &c. as, *Rogat, quid veniam Cariam,* Plaur. *Inde Sardiniam venit,* Cic. *Hellepontum proveniunt,* Liv. *Devenire locos lator,* Virg. *Lavinæque littora venit,* Id. *Eandem speluncam deveniunt,* Id. *Quascunque abducite terras,* Id. — Also, before Nouns

Nouns of Measure or Space ; as, *Latus quinque pedes : Patet tres ulnas.* — And otherwiso often ; as, *Magnam enim partem ex Iambis nostra constat oratio, Cic. Exspectabam hodie aut summum cras, Id.* for *ad partem*, (sometimes call'd *partim*) and *ad summum* : So, *Plurimum, minimum, &c.* — Also, before *Exequias, inficias, suppetias.* — Also, always before a First Supine ; as, *Eamus visum, i. e. ad visum, or ad visere.*

Ante is understood before *Calendas, Nonas, Idus* ; as, *Tertio Calendas ; Pridie Nonas* : And other Nouns of Time ; as, *Decem annos natus.* When *abinc* is express'd, then *ante* is understood ; as, *Multos abinc annos* ; or *in*, sometimes : But if *abinc* be omitted, then the word of Time is always put in the Ablative Case ; which Ablative is govern'd of the Preposition *in*, either express'd ; as, *Postremo & quâ in die parva perisset soror, Ter.* Or (more usually) understood ; as, *Superioribus diebus veni in Cumanum, Liv.*

Circa is sometimes understood, when Time is notèd ; as, *Homo id atatis.*

Cum is commonly express'd ; but yet often understood, when it denotes Society of Person or Thing ; as, *Simul his, Hor. Si Recip. commodum fieri potest, Cæf.* When it signifies the Mode of an Action, or the Manner of doing, it is seldom express'd, but commonly understood. It is sometimes express'd ; as, *Summâ cum humanitate tractavit hominem : Cum bonâ gratiâ dimittere : Cum silentio animadvertere, &c.* But far oftner understood. When it signifies the Instrument, if it ever signifie so, (which *Martinius* denies) it is always understood. That it doth so signifie, *Rhenius* and the *Oxford Grammar* do affirm ; but confess, it is to be suppress'd. Perhaps, it is better to say, That *A* or *Ab* were the Prepositions, which the Latins were us'd to joyn to the Instrument ; as, *Occidit à ferro : Perit à veneno.* Some think, that *With* is the Natural Importance of an Ablative Case, as *Of* is of the Genitive, or *To* of a Dative ; and so it needs no Preposition ; *Instrumenti enim ratio solius Ablativi vis est, sicut Græcè Dativi : Nequis deesse prepositionem hanc putet, quæ tamen sæpè in publicis gentium idiomatis hodie adhibetur, Linaë.*

De or *E* are often understood ; as, *It portis, Virg. Vis se loco movere non possent, Cæf. Cedet cœmptis saltibus, Hor.* For we read, *Non ut de sede secunda Cederet, Id.* *De* is often understood, when it signifies like *super*. For, as *Cicero* says, *Quid de P. Clodio fiat, rescribe* ; so, *Quid hoc homine faciatis ? Cic. Nunc audio quid illo factum est, Ter. Quid me futurum censes ? Id.* — Also, before Nouns that signifie the Cause or Manner ; as, *Flere alicujus obitu :*

obitu : *Visitare Iolium* : *Quare* for *quâ de re* : *More humano* : *Vivere rapto* : *Meâ pecuniâ curabo* : *Meo consilio factum* : For we read also, *De meo consilio & vos fecissetis*, Cic.

Ex is understood ; as, *Ere cavo clypeum*, Virg. *Vina promens dolio*, Hor.

In is frequently understood ; especially before Nouns of Place or Time ; as, *Domo me contineo*, Cic. *Limes agro positus*, Virg. *Sardiniam venit*, as well as *Veni in Cumanum*, Cic. *Athenis natus est*. — Also, before Nouns that denote the Subject, or the Object, or the Cause ; as, *Opus est libris* : *Accusat me eo quod*, &c. —

And otherwise ; as, *Sum magno timore* : *Magnâ est apud omnes gloriâ* : *Ludis delector* : *Ordine scribo* : *Præstantior armis quam togâ*, &c.

Ob or *Propter* are often understood, when the Infinitive Mood stands for an Accusative Case ; as, *Doleo illum mihi irasci*, for *ob irasci*. — Oftentimes before *id*, *quid*, *quod* ; as, *Nunc id prædo* : *Quid fas* ? *Quod ego te per hanc dextram oro*, for *quam ob rem*.

Per before Nouns of Time and Distance ; as, *Vixit centum annos* : *Distat quinque miliaria*. — Also, before Adjectives, or Passive Participles, when a Part is noted ; as, *Hirsutus brachia*.

Post, *Pridie*, and *Postridie*, do properly take after them a Genitive Case, by virtue of the Noun *die* that is in them. But if we find *Pridie* before an Accusative Case, we must understand *Ante*. See *Ante*. If we find *Postridie* before an Accusative Case, we must understand *Post* ; as, *Quæ postridie ludos Apollinares futura est*, Cic.

Præ after Adjectives and Adverbs of the Comparative Degree ; as, *Dolior cæteris*. — Also, before the Ablative Case of the Cause ; as, *Lachrymatur gaudio* : *Titubat ebrietate* : *Pallet amore*. Note, That the Ablative Case that *Præ* governs, is sometimes understood ; as, *Omnes reliquas habeo*, *præ quod tu velis*, Plaut. for *præ eo quod*.

Propter. See *Ob*.

Pro is omitted before Words of Price ; as, *Emi centum nummis*.

Sub is omitted frequently before an Ablative Case, said to be put Absolute with a Participle ; as, *Te consule* : *Sole oriente*.

Secundum, the same with *quoad*, or *quoad ad*, (*κατά*) is omitted after Adjectives, and Verbs Passives and Neuters, before an Accusative Case ; as, *Cætera fulvus*. This is an Imitation of the Greeks, with whom this *Synecdoche* is very familiar.

C H A P. XLIII.

Of Interjections.

AN *Interjection* is an undeclin'd Part of Speech, making a Sentence of its self. (1)

Interjections were invented to express a sudden Passion of the Mind, without the help of any other Part of Speech. (2)

Passions arise either from the Apprehension of some Good, or some Evil.

From Apprehension of some Good, arise Passions, and consequently *Interjections*, of

Wondering; as, *Papa, hui.*

Rejoycing; as, *Evax, io, vah.*

Praising; as, *Euge, eja.*

Calling; as, *Hens, ô, êhò, ehodum.*

Laughing; as, *Ha, ha, he.*

From an Apprehension of some Evil, arise Passions and *Interjections* of

Deriding; as, *Hui, vah.*

Grieving; as, *Hem, chen, hai, hei, oh, ah.*

Fearing; as, *Atat.*

Being Angry with; as, *Hem, vah, proh.*

Shunning; as, *Phy.* (3)

Threat-

Threatning ; as, *Væ*.

Cursing ; as, *Malum, ve malum*.

From an Apprehension both of Good and Evil,
spring *Interjections* of

Exclaiming ; as, *ô, prob*.

Commanding Silence ; as, *Au, ft, pax*. (4)

The same Word sometimes serves to express two
different Passions. (5)

Some Nouns and Verbs are sometimes us'd *Inter-
jectionally*. (6)

Interjections properly govern no Case (7) : Yet
some of them are apply'd to Cases ; and to some Ca-
ses rather than others (8). But most of them stand
absolutely in a Sentence, apply'd to no Case at
all. (9)

Although an *Interjection* be properly no Part of a
Sentence, yet sometimes there seems to be a want of
it in a Sentence. (10)

Notes on CHAP. XLIII.

(1) **I**T is rather an Inarticulate Sound, than a Word; much less fit to constitute a different Part of Speech, were it not in compliance with Custom: for Beasts speak this Part of Speech as well as Men.

(2) Some add Gesture of the Body to Passion of the Mind, *Rhen.*

(3) Some add *Apagē*, which is indeed a Greek Verb.

(4) Some are of opinion, that *ſ* in *Terence*, should be written *ſi*, for *ſilentium*.

(5) Thus *Hei* is sometimes an Interjection of *Praising*; as, *Hei noſter, laudo*, *Ter.* Sometimes of *Fearing*; as, *Hei vereor, ne quid Andria apportet mali*, *Id.* *Hem* is of *Threatning*; as, *Nihilne? Hem.* Or of *Stomaching*; as, *Hem aſtutias*, *Ter.* *Io* is sometimes of *Re-joycing*; as, *Dicite iō Pæan*, *Ovid.* And sometimes of *Grieving*; as, *Uror, iō remove ſava puella faces*, *Tibul.*

(6) Such are, *Malum, turpè, nefandum, fœdè, amabò, queſcò, &c.*

(7) The Caſe that is joyn'd to Interjections, really depends upon ſome Word underſtood, or is ſuch as may ſubſiſt without an Interjection: So, *O feſtus dies hominis!* i. e. *O quam eſt feſtus dies!* *O fortunatos!* i. e. *O quam dicimus fortunatos!* The Vocative Caſe needs no Interjection. *Heu pietas!* i. e. *Heu quanta eſt hac pietas!* *Prob Deum fidem!* i. e. *Obteſtor or imploro fidem.* *Hei mihi*, and *Va tibi*, are as much as, *Magnus dolor eſt mihi*, *Magnum malum ſibi tibi*; for the Interjection is uſ'd in ſtead of the Noun that ſignifies that Paſſion, which the Interjection denotes.

(8) *Prob, Ab, Vab*, love an Accuſative or a Vocative Caſe; *Hem*, and *Heu*, a Dative, an Accuſative, or Vocative; *Eheu*, an Accuſative; *Heus*, and *Ebe*, a Vocative; *O* of Calling, a Vocative, (but often omitted); of *Exclaiming*, a Nominative, an Accuſative, or Vocative.

(9) As, *Eheu quam macer eſt*, &c. *Spem gregis (Ab) ſilice in noſtâ*, &c. *Virg.*

(10) As, *Me miſerum*, *Ter.* *Facinus indignum*, *Cic. ſub. O*, vel *Hau.*

C H A P. XLIV.

Of Figures belonging to Orthography.

THE Adding, Taking away, or Altering of a Letter, or a Syllable in a Word, is call'd *Metaplasmus*.

Addition is made Four ways; by *Prothesis*, *Epenthesis*, *Paragoge*, and *Dièresis*.

Prothesis, or *Prosthesis*, is a Figure that adds a Letter, or a Syllable, to the Beginning of a Word; as, *gnatus*, *gnavus*. (1)

Epenthesis adds in the Middle of a Word; as, *aliturum*, *relligio*. (2)

Paragoge adds in the End of a Word; as, *monstrari*. (3)

Dièresis dissolves one Syllable into two, and so makes the Word longer by a Syllable, although there be no more Letters; as, *suetus*, *dissoluisse*, *silue*. (4)

Detraction, or Taking away, is also made Four ways; by *Apharesis*, *Syncope*, *Apocope*, *Syneresis*.

Apharesis is a Figure that takes a Letter, or a Syllable, from the Beginning of a Word; as, *conia* for *ciconia*. (5)

Syncope takes out of the Middle; as, *caldum*, *seclum*, *dixi*. (6)

Apocope takes from the End; as, *venatu*, *tun'*, *dixin'*. (7)

Syneresis contracts two Vowels, which belong to diverse Syllables, into one Syllable; as, *Phaton*, *ve-*
mens. (8)

Meta-

Metathesis transplaceth a Letter ; as, *pistris* for *pristis*. (9)

Antithesis puts one Letter for another ; as, *faciundum*, *olli*. (10)

Tmesis cuts a compounded Word asunder, and puts another Word between the Parts ; as, *inque salutatus*. (11)

Notes on CHAP. XLIV.

(1) SO they say, *gnarus* : But, indeed, these may be the Proper and Primitive Words, for ought that appears. *Tetuli* for *tuli*, is of the old Verb *tollo* or *tulo*, in imitation of the Greek Preterperfect Tense.

(2) For *alutum*, *religio*. The Poets use it much for Verse-fake.

(3) Any *Infinitive Mood Passive* is thus alter'd by the Poets.

(4) For *Suetus*, *dissolvissse*, *silva*.

(5) *Plaut. Truc. 3. 2.* *Comas* for *Heconiah*. Hither are refer'd, *Ruit*, *temmere*, *mitto* ; but they are rather *Simples* us'd for the *Compounds*.

(6) Many other amongst the Poets ; as, *Pueritia*, *surpuerat*, *repostum*, &c.

(7) For *Venatui*, *tunc*, *dixtine*. *Ennius* his *Apocopes* are obsolete ; *Latificum gau.* *Alisomum cæl. endo suam do.* for *gaudium*, *cælum*, and *domum*. Sometimes a *Syncope* and *Apocope* are found in the same Word ; as, *audin'*, *dixtin'*.

(8) For *Phaeton*, *vehemens*. So *Thesēi* for *Thesēi*, amongst the Poets.

(9) Seldom in *Latin*, (*i pra* for *præ i*, Ter.) ; in *Greek*, usual.

(10) For *faciendum*, *olli*. So *optume* for *optime*, &c. antiq.

(11) For *insalutatusque*. Unskilful Poets of old, ventur'd to divide a simple Word sometimes ; as, *Deficiente pecu*, *deficit omne*, *nia*. But not to be imitated.

C H A P. XLV.

Of Figures belonging to Etymology.

THERE are Four Figures belonging to that Part of Grammar call'd *Etymology* ; viz. *Antimeria*, *Enallage*, *Hellenisme*, and *Archaisme*.

Antimeria is, when one Part of Speech is us'd for another ; as, *Scire tuum*, for *Scientia tua*, thy Knowledge. (1)

Enallage is, when one Quality or Kind, one Number, Case, Gender, Person, Degree of Comparison, Mood, Tense, or the like, is put for another. (2)

Hellenisme is, when *Latin* Words are declin'd after the manner of the *Greeks* ; as *familiâs*, for *familia* : or a *Greek* Case is us'd in stead of a *Latin* one ; as *Pallada*, for *Palladem* ; *Cyclôpas*, for *Cyclopes*.

Archaisme is, when Authors use old and obsolete Words, or Formation of Words ; as *mis, tis*, for *mei* and *tui* ; *materiali*, for *materia* ; *annis*, for *annus*. (3)

Notes on CHAP. XLV.

(1) **I**T is usual with good Authors, to use one Part of Speech for another. It were almost endless, to reckon up all the Examples that are brought; and, perhaps, many that are brought, are not Examples of this thing. The most famous Species of this Figure, are these that follow: 1. A Noun is sometimes us'd instead of a Pronoun; as, *Siquid est in Flacco viri*, Hor. for *in me*. Sometimes instead of a Participle; as *prudens* for *providens*, *gnarus* for *sciens*; as, *Concha operis opes suas, gnara propter illas se peti*, Plin. So *sibila ora*, and *corusca fulmina*, for *sibilantia* and *coruscantia*. Sometimes for an Adverb; as, *Bacchanalia vivunt*; *Vix hominem sonat*; for *Bacchanaliter*, *humaniter*. Nouns Adjectives of the Neuter Gender, are often us'd instead of Adverbs; yea, and sometimes those of the Feminine and Masculine Gender. See Chap. XL. Fig. (5). Adjectives of Time, (especially amongst the Poets) are Elegantly us'd in the Masculine Gender, instead of Adverbs; as, *Aeneas se maturinus agebat*, Virg. for *mañe*. *Nec gregibus nocturnus obambulat*, Id. for *noctu*. *Nullus* is Elegantly us'd for *non*; as, *Philotimus nullus venit*, Cic. *Esti nullus dixeris*, Ter. So, *Nullus dubito; nullus timeo*, &c. for *non*. Sometimes Interjectionally; as, *Qui (malum) alii?* Ter. 2. A Pronoun is sometimes us'd instead of an Adverb; as, *Quid* for *quorsum*; *Quid multa?* *Quid majora sequar?* For *cur*; as, *Si ad vitulam spectes nihil est quod pocula laudes*, Virg. Except we rather choose to say, That *propter* is understood. *Qua* and *qua*, are us'd for *tum tum*: *Idem* for *item*; as, *Qui nullam adulteram, non eandem esse veneficam dixit*, Quintil. for *item*. *Quod* for *quantum*; *Quod in te fuit*, Ter. *Non pepuli istas fores, quod sciam*, Id. for *quantum*. 3. A Verb is sometimes us'd instead of a Noun; as, *Scire tuum: Istud vivere triste*, Persl. for *Ista vita tristis* τὸ ζῆν. *Licet* and *licebit* are often us'd for the Conjunction *quavis*; as, *Sint astra licebit, Non deerit populo, te veniente, dies*, Martial. 4. A Participle of the Present Tense is often us'd instead of a Noun Substantive in *ter*; as, *Amantium ira*, for *amatorum*: *Donum pensatur animo dantis*, for *datoris*. And Participles of the Present Tense of Verbs Neuters, are often us'd amongst the Poets instead of Nouns Adjectives; as *humantia* for *humida*, Ovid. Sometimes instead of Adverbs; as *libens* for *libenter*, Sen. 5. An Adverb is sometimes us'd instead of a Noun; as, *Ecce aliud cras*, Persl. Sometimes for a Pronoun; as

unde, for *à quo*, or *à quibus*. *E prædonibus unde emerat*; Ter. *Hinc illa lachryma*; i. e. *ex hoc*. Sometimes for a Conjunction; as *simul simul*, for *tum tum*, Quintil. *Perinde, ita, ut*, are sometimes us'd for *tales* and *quales*. *Pridie, postridie*, and *ante*, when they follow Prepositions, are us'd for Nouns. *Partim* is us'd for *pars* or *parte*; as, *Partim hominum venerunt*. *Surrexisti à convivio cum partim illorum*, Cato. *Amplius, plus, minus*, when they are Adverbs, often seem to be us'd for *plures, pauciores*. 6. A Conjunction is sometimes us'd for an Adverb; as, *Habet gladium, sed duos*, Plaut. for *imò duos*. *Præterea* is us'd for *præter eum*, or *præter te*; as, *Eundem ab hostibus metui, præterea neminem*, Cic. *A me vero ita diligitur, ut tibi uni concedam, præterea nemini*, Id. 7. A Preposition is sometimes us'd for a Verb; as, *Nec fuga jam super ulla*, for *superest*: *O mibi sola mei super Aſſyanaſis imago*, Virg. for *superexistens*. Prepositions are often us'd for Adverbs; as, *Hymem atque atatem juxta pati*, Sallust.

(2) It is an *Enallage* of the Quality of a Noun, when a Substantive Proper is us'd Appellatively for an Adjective; as, *Qui Curios simulant*; i. e. *viros temperantes*. *Omniſſi atas Clodios, non omniſſi Cicerones ſerſi*; i. e. *improbos, non probos*. *Arte Plato, viſa Cato, Tullius ore*; i. e. *doctiſſimus, graviſſimus, eloquentiſſimus*. When an Appellative Substantive is put for an Adjective; as, *Præſta te virum*; i. e. *fortem*: When a Noun Cardinal is us'd for an Ordinal; as, *Uno & octogefimo anno*, Cic. for *primo*, although they always thus ſpeak: Or an Ordinal for a Cardinal; as, *Sexta cervice feratur*, Juv. i. e. *ſex cervicibus*: Or a Distributive for a Cardinal; as, *Bis quinos ſilet ille dies*, Virg. i. e. *bis quinque*: Or a Partitive for a Cardinal or Ordinal; as, *Uno aut altero die*, Cic. for *duobus diebus*; *Altero & vigeſimo die*, Id. for *ſecundo*: So ſometimes, by an *Enallage* of the Species, a Primitive is us'd for a Derivative; as, *Verſus Homeri*, for *Homericus*: A Derivative, eſpecially a Deminutive, for a Primitive; as, *Meum corculum*: A Proper Name for a Poſſeſſive; as, *Teucri*, for *Trojani*; *Romuli gens*, for *Romulea*: *Patronymicks of Place*, for Poſſeſſives; as, *Sicelides muſa*, for *Sicula*: A Certain Number for an Uncertain. Hither may be reſerr'd, when *unus* is put for *uniuſmodi*, or for *ſolus*; *primus* for *præſantiſſimus*, *ſecundus* for *proximus*, *extremus* for *deterimus*, *numerus* for *copia*, *genus* for *ſpecies*, *duplices* for *ambo*, *multus* for *ſerſus*, *beſtermus* for *pridianus*, *craftimus* for *poſtridianus*, *nemo* for *ullus*, *locus* for *tempus*, and a True Affection for a Diſſembled. Examples of all theſe, ſee *Rhen. Paralip.* Amongſt the Pronouns,

It is an *Enallage*, when a Reciprocal is us'd for a Relative; as, *Sic licet inde sibi tellus placata visque*, Mart. for *illi*: Or for a Possessive; as, *Vivite felices quibus est fortuna peracta* Jam sua, Virg. for *vestra*: Or a Possessive for a Primitive; as, *Neque id odio fecis tuo*, Ter. for *tui*. Sometimes, by an *Enallage* of the genus amongst Verbs, an Active is us'd for a Passive; except we say, (which is better) that *se* is understood: A Passive for an Active; except (which is better) we say, that these Verbs were antiently Common: A Neuter for an Active; as, *Resonat lucos*, i. e. *resonare facit*, Virg. *Foras simul omnes prouunt se*, Ter. Amongst the Participles, the Active seems sometimes to be us'd for the Passives; as, *Tendenti barba cadebat*, Virg. for *tonso*: *Filius indulgentissimus*, Quintil. i. e. *cui indulgetur*: And many Passives for Actives; as, *Consideratus, circumspectus*, &c. See Chap. XXXIX. Fig. (13.) Amongst Adverbs there is an *Enallage*, when Adverbs of Place are us'd for Adverbs of Time; as, *Ubi videt me in tantum honorem*, *ibi homo capis me obsecrare*, Ter. for *cum, tum*. An Adverb of Quality is sometimes us'd in stead of an Adverb of Intending; as, *Sermo bene longus*: *Male multabo illam*; for *valde*. *Adco, tum*, and *ita*, are Elegantly us'd for *valde*; as, *Adolescentem adeo nobilem*: *Nom ita dissimili sunt argumento*. *Usque*, an Adverb of Time and Place, is sometimes us'd to signify *Always* or *Continually*; as, *Naturam expellas furca licet usque recurret*. Amongst Conjunctions, there is an *Enallage*, when an Exceptive is us'd in stead of an Adversative; as, *Ei nihil liberorum nisi diuitia erant*, Plaur. *Nescio, nisi mihi Deos satis scio fuisse iratos*, Ter. for *sed*, or *sed enim*. *Nisi* is also us'd for *quam*; as, *Nihil aliud se fatigando nisi odium querere*, Sallust. *As* is sometimes us'd for *saltem*; *si* for *an*; as, *Quaritur si majori parti prodest*: *Enim* sometimes for *sed*. — An *Enallage* of Number is, when either the Singular Number is us'd in stead of the Plural, or the Plural in stead of the Singular; both very usual, especially amongst the Poets; as, *Nostros vidisti stentis ocellos*, Ovid. An *Enallage* of Case, (call'd *Antiphrasis*) is, when one Case is put for another. Several Examples are brought of this; (such as, *Homo id atatis*; *Nugas hoc genus*; *Tutumque putavit*; *Jam bonus esse socer*; *Projice tela manu sanguis meus*; *Occurrunt animae, quales nec candidiores Terra tulit*; *Puer Ascanius cui nunc cognomen Iulo*; *Cervix cui lactea crines Accepit*; *Is clamor talo*; *Quibus Hector ab oris Expectate venis*; *Haret pede pes*; *Urbem quam statido vestra est*; *Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas*; *Herba Lapathi*; *Nec cernitur ulli*; *Quid tibi hanc rem curatio est*; *Pater insidiis oppressé jaces*.) All which, and many more, will be well solv'd with-

out an *Antiphrasis*, by the Figures *Ellipsis* and *Hellenismus*, as will appear hereafter in the *Syntax*. *Enallage* in Gender will also be solv'd by the same Figures hereafter. As for *Enallage* in Mood, Tense, and Person, see *Chap. XXIII, XXIV*. There is also an *Enallage* in Degrees of Comparison, as when the Positive is us'd in stead of the Comparative; as, *Paulo qui est homo tolerabilis*, Ter. Or the Comparative for the Positive; as, *Plures and complures*, for *multi*: Or the Comparative for the Superlative; as, *Duo majora navigia submersa sunt*: Or the Superlative for the Positive; as, *Quam intimum habeam te*, Ter. *Quam maximas gratias*: Or the Superlative for the Comparative; as, *Ab aequinoctio primo*, Col. i. c. *priore*.

(3) So *Gutturcm, artua, hac noctu, I puer, tam nulli consilii, mihi solæ, non quisquam alia mulier, lenibat, scibo, reddibitur, mala vino lavere, valde tonit, sicm, duim, perduim, fuat, humorem exugebo, progredi, moriri, expugnassio, prohibessere; Quam rem prefidio nobis sperant futuram, Cic.* See *Chap. XXVI. Fig. (10)*. To which may be added, those Phrases, *Præsentie* or *absentie, insperantis, and merenti nobis*, which are in *Terence, Plautus, Catullus, Tibullus*.

C H A P. XLVI.

*Of the Agreement of the Parts of Speech to
make up a Sentence.*

THere are in *Latin* Speech, especially (1) Two Agreements or Concords. The First between the Nominative Case and the Verb : The other between the Substantive and the Adjective. (2)

A Verb Personal, of what Mood soever, (except the *Infinitive*) agreeth with the Nominative Case of a Noun, or Pronoun Substantive, in Number and Person; as, *Ego amo*, I love; *Tu sequeris*, thou followest; *Præceptor amatur*, the Master is loved; *Nos docemus*, we teach; *Vos auditis*, ye hear; *Pueri instruuntur*, Boys are instructed.

A Verb of the *Infinitive* Mood hath an Accusative Case before it. (3)

Whatsoever answers to the Question, *Who* or *What* made upon the Verb, may be taken to be the Nominative Case to the Verb. But the Verb must be of the Third Person, if the Nominative Case be not a Casual Word; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every Man hath his own Will. (4)

The Nominative Cases of the First and Second Person, *Ego*, *tu*, *nos*, and *vos*, are commonly understood; seldom express'd, except it be for distinction, or Emphasis sake; as, *Ego studeo*, *Tu ludis*; I study, Thou play'st; *Tu solus amicus*, Thou art my only Friend. (5)

The Nominative Cases of the Third Person, *Ille*, *illi*,

homo, homines, are also often understood, when the Signification of the Verb belongs only to Men; as, *Ferunt, aiunt, narrant, tradunt*, They report; *Est qui non spernit*, There is a Man who doth not despise; *Sunt quos juvat*, There are Men whom it delighteth. (6)

The Verb *Sum* in any Person, is frequently understood; as, *Boni rari*, Good Men are rare; *Quod iustum, idem tutum*, That which is just, is safe. And in Proverbial Sentences, any Verb may be understood; as, *Cornici oculum*, sub. *configit*; *Fortuna fortes*, sub. *juvat*. And frequently in short ways of speaking; as, *Quid pater?* sub. *agit*, What doth thy Father? *Cui ille*, sub. *respondit*, To whom he answered.

Two or more Nominative Cases Singular, whether they have or have not a Conjunction Copulative coming between them, will commonly (7) have a Verb Plural; as, *Nox, & amor, vinumque nihil moderabile suadent*; Night, and Love, and Wine advise nothing moderate: *Debilitant vires balnea, Bacchus, amor*; Baths, Wine, and Love weaken the Strength. Yea, though one of the Nominative be turn'd into an Ablative with *Cum*; as, *Remo cum fratre Quirinus Jura dabant*.

Which Verb, because it cannot be of Two Persons at once, if the Nominative Cases be of different Persons, will be of the Worthier Person; as, *Ego & tu scribimus*, I and thou write; *Tu & pater scribitis*, Thou and thy Father write (8). Note, That the First Person is Worthier than the Second, and the Second than the Third.

A Nominative Singular, if it be a Noun of Multitude, will admit of a Verb Plural; as, *Part secant*, Part cut. *Turba ruunt*. (9)

A Verb standing 'between Two Nominative Cases, one of the Singular Number,' the other of the Plural, may agree with either of them. (10)

Some Verbs agree with a Nominative Case before them, and take also a Nominative Case after them: Such especially are, *Sum, forem, fio, existo*, I am: *evado*, I go out; *maneo*, I remain; *appareo*, I appear; *nascor*, I am born; *orior*, I arise, &c. as, *Ira furor brevis est*, Anger is a short Madness. Also, Verbs Passives of *Calling, Esteeming, and Knowing* (11). Also, Verbs of *Gesture*. (12)

Notes on CHAP. XLVI.

(1) **A**S for the Accommodation of some Adverbs and Conjunctions to some particular Moods of Verbs, it is not worthy to be call'd a *Concord*; And the Agreement of one Substantive with another by Apposition, is also improperly call'd a *Concord*: Of which yet, something shall be spoke hereafter.

(2) The Relative *Qui* is an Adjective; and agrees with his Substantive, as other Adjectives do. See the next Chapter.

(3) See Chap. IX. Fig. (3.) This is mostly after Verbs of *Sense, Affection, Saying, and Signifying*, Rhen.

(4) So may an *Infinitive Mood*, an *Adverb*, a piece of a *Sentence*, and a *Word put ὀνόμας*; i. e. to signify its self: as, *Dic mihi cras istud, Posthume, quando venis*, Mart. *Ingenuas didicisse artes Emollis mores*, Ovid. *Sape vale dicitur*.

(5) *Tu nidum servas, ego laudo ruri amanti Rivos*, Hor. *Tu dominus, tu vir, tu mihi frater eris*, Ovid.

(6) Also the Nominative Cases, *Aer, Cælum, Deus*, or the like, are commonly understood before those Verbs of an exempt Action, which are usually look'd upon as Impersonals; such as, *Tonat, pluit, ningit, lucefcit*, &c. For these Nominative Cases are sometimes express'd; as, *Aer tonuit sine nube Deus*, Ovid. *Saxa pluunt, Scat.*
Yet

Yet these Verbs are sometimes us'd with an Ablative Case ; as, *Pluit Iactis, sanguine, carne, &c.* Liv.

(7) For sometimes they are content with a Verb Singular ; as, *Mens, & ratio, & consilium, in senibus est,* Cic.

(8) *Si tu & Tullia lux nostra valetis, ego & suavissimus Cicero valemus,* Cic. Yet we read, *Ego & Cicero meus flagitabit,* Cic. And other like Passages.

(9) Hither is refer'd that of Terence, *Aperite aliquis ostium,* Oxf. Gram. *Aliquis vim habet pluralem ; q. d. Aliquis è vobis aperiat, hic, ille, tu,* Farn.

(10) Most commonly with the former, or the Subjectum ; as, *Omnia pontus erant,* Ovid. *Sanguis erant lachrymæ,* Luc. *Gaudia sunt principium doloris.* Yet sometimes with the latter ; as, *Amanitium ira redintegratio est amoris : Quæ loca Numidia appellatur,* Sall. *Lege naturæ composita paupertas magnæ sunt divitiæ,* Sen. *Ludi Compitalitii fuit initium consulatus tui,* Cic.

(11) As, *Discor, credor, judicor, evincor, deprehendor, reperior ; as, Laudibus arguitur vini vinosus Homerus,* Hor.

(12) Such as, *Eo, ambulo, sedeo, curro, cubo, &c.* as, *Nemo saltat sobrius,* Cic.

CHAP.

C H A P. XLVII.

*Of the Concord between the Substantive,
and the Adjective.*

THE Adjective, of what kind soever, agrees with his Substantive in Case, Gender, and Number; as, *Amicus certus in re incertâ cernitur*, A sure Friend is tryed in a doubtful Matter.

Whatever answers to the Question, *Who* or *What*, made upon the Adjective, may be taken to be the Substantive to it. But if the Substantive be not a Casual Word, the Adjective must be of the Neuter Gender; as, *Excute hoc totum bellè*, Shake off all this bravely; *Scire tuum*, Thy Knowledge.

The Substantives, *Homo*, a Man, and *negotium*, a thing, are commonly understood; as, *Rari quippe boni*, Good Men are rare; *Triste lupus stabulis*, A Wolf is a sad thing to the Folds.

Sometimes a Feminine Substantive is understood; as, *Vesci bubulâ*, or *ferinâ*, sub. *carne*, To feed on Beef or Venison. (1)

Many Adjectives both of the Masculine and Neuter Gender, are sometimes us'd for Substantives; as, *Amicus certus*, A sure Friend; *Summum bonum*, The chiefest Good. (2)

On the other hand, Substantives are sometimes us'd Adjectively; as, *Mareæ strepitum*, A Masculine noise. (3)

An Adjective of the Neuter Gender, that denotes
Part

Part or *Quantity*, often makes his Substantive, that should be of the Nominative, or the Accusative Case, to be the Genitive; as, *Quid mali?* What Evil? *Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei*; How much Money, so much Credit. Some Feminine Adjectives do thus. (4)

Two or more Substantives Singular, especially with a Conjunction Copulative coming between them, require an Adjective (or a Substantive in Apposition) of the Plural Number; as, *Julius & Octavius fortissimi*, *Julius* and *Octavius* were valiant; *Romulus & Remus fratres*, *Romulus* and *Remus* Brethren. (5)

But then, if the Substantives be of different Genders, the Adjective shall agree in Gender with the Worthier Substantive; as, *Pater & mater mortui*, Father and Mother are dead. (6)

The Masculine Gender is worthier than the Feminine, and the Feminine than the Neuter.

But in things inanimate, or not apt to have Life, the Adjective will either agree with the latter, or be put in the Neuter Gender, though neither of the Substantives be of the Neuter. (7)

If the Substantives be one animate, the other inanimate, the Adjective may either be of the Neuter Gender, and agree with *negotia*, understood; or agree with the animate Substantive. (8)

An Adjective standing between Two Substantives of divers Genders, loves to agree with that which is the former in Grammatical Construction; as, *Semiramis puer credita est. Læticia Parisii dicta*. Yet sometimes it agrees with the latter; as, *Non omnis error stulticia dicenda est. Paupertas visum est onus*. (9)

When

When Two Substantives come together by Apposition, the Adjective will agree with that which is the former in *Grammatical Construction*, if it be animate (10): But if the former be inanimate, then rather with the latter. (11)

An Adjective of the Superlative Degree, put Partitively, often agrees in Gender with the Substantive that is spoke of; as, *Indus fluminum maximus: Lupus animalium villosissimus*. But more usually with the Genitive Case; as, *Rosa florum pulcherrimus*.

Notes on CHAP. XLVII.

(1) *SO, Febri in tertianâ, quartanâ: pecuniarum in repetundarum Roman. reus: aquâ in calidâ lavari: coronâ in civicâ donari, &c. (Heb. Vid. Ellipsin.*

(2) See Chap. XX. Fig. (8.)

(3) *So, Heroas sensus, popa venter, Persl. Populum latè regem; Virg. &c.*

(4) *As, Nigra lanarum nullum bibunt colorem. Canum degeneres caudam sub alvum reffebunt. Surdis etiam rerum sua cuique venena. Plin. An Hellenisme.*

(5) Sometimes one of the Substantives is turn'd into an Ablative Case with *Cum*: And yet even then the Adjective will be of the Plural Number; as, *Fors eadem Ismarios Hebrum cum Strymone siccat, Ovid.*

(6) In living things the Feminine Gender seems to be more worthy than the Neuter; as, *Ancilla & jumentum reperta.*

(7) With the latter; as, *Natum sit toti provincia, tibi omnium salutem, liberos, famam, fortunas esse charissimas, Cic. Or be put in the Neuter Gender; as, Divitiæ, decus, & gloria in oculis sita sunt, Sall. Which Neuter indeed agrees with Negotia. Yet sometimes we find the Feminine Gender more worthy than the Neuter, in things inanimate; as, *Leges & plebiscita contrae, Luc. Quid de viribus olivetisque**

olivetisque dicam, quarum fructus uberrimi? Cic. Yea, and the Masculine more worthy than the Feminine; as, *Agros villasque intactos sinebat*, Tac.

(8) *Delebatur cereo funali, & tibicine, qua privatus sibi sumferat*, Cic. Or else agree with the animate Substantive; as, *Fane, fac aternos pacem pacisque ministros*, Ovid. Sometimes, though both the Substantives are animate, yet the Adjective is found in the Neuter Gender; as, *Polypus & Chamaleon glabra sunt*, Solin. sub. *animalia*. *Gens cui natura corpora animosque magis magna quam forma dedit*, Liv. *Parentes, liberos, fratres vilia habuerunt*, Tac. sub. *negotia*.

(9) So, *Vestes quas geritis sordida lana fuit*, Ovid. *Tum domicilia conjuncta, quas urbes dicimus*, Cic. This is most usual in Passive Participles of *Calling*, and *Qui*.

(10) As, *Cum duo fulmina nostri imperii Cn. & Pub. Scipiones extincti occidissent*, Cic.

(11) As, *Apiola oppidum Latinorum captum à Tarquinio*, Plin.

CHAP.

C H A P. XLVIII.

Of the Relative, the Concord of Substantives, and of Reciprocal.

THE Pronoun Relative, *Qui, Que, Quod, That, Who,* or *Which*, (as all other Adjectives) agrees with his Substantive in Case, Gender, and Number; as, *Dies est nullus in quo die non dico pro reo*, There is no Day, in which Day I do not plead for a Defendant. (1)

But the Substantive to the Relative is, for brevity's sake, most commonly and elegantly suppress'd, as being easily supply'd from the Antecedent; as, *Habeo libros quibus utor*, I have Books which I use; where *libris* is understood: *Utor libris quos habeo*, I use the Books which I have; where *libros* is understood. Yet sometimes it is necessary, that the Substantive to the Relative be express'd, to avoid Ambiguity. (2)

The Relative is commonly to be conceived, as standing between Two Substantives: But the Antecedent Substantive is sometimes understood, and the Relative notwithstanding agreeth with the latter; as, *Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas*, That the Plays might please the People, which Plays he made; where the Antecedent *fabula* is understood. (3)

Sometimes both the Substantives are understood; as, *Est qui nec spernit*, There is who doth not scorn. (4)

The Relative doth not always agree in Gender and Number to the Antecedent Substantive, but to some Word of a different Gender or Number understood (5).

Some-

Sometimes it agrees to a Substantive made out of the Sense of a former Period (6): And sometimes it refers to a Substantive, that lies hid under a Possessive (7). Respect also is had to the Genitive Case of the Primitive, lying hid under the Possessive, when such Genitive Cases as *Ipsius, solius, unius, duorum, trium, omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque, &c.* or the Genitive Cases of Participles, are added to the Possessives, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester.* (8)

Sometimes the Relative is put into the Case of the Antecedent, neglecting the Case of his own Substantive. (9)

The Relative standing between Two Substantives of divers Genders, rather loves to agree with the latter; as, *Animal plenum rationis quem vocamus hominem. Homines tuentur illum globum quæ terra dicitur.* But sometimes also with the former. (10)

Qualis, quot, quotus; quantus, quisque, quicunque, uter, follow the Construction of the Relative, in being govern'd of a Word that comes after them.

As for the Concord of Substantives; When Two Substantives come together, without any Sign between them, and belong both to the same Person or Thing, the latter is put in the same Case with the former, by Apposition; as, *Urbs. Romæ, The City Rome; Anna soror, Sister Anne; Virginem Mariam, The Virgin Mary.* (11)

And it is not necessary, that they be of the same Gender or Number: For we say, *Aquila rex avium: Tempus magister stultorum: Urbs Philippi.* Yet if the latter be a Substantive that can vary its Gender, (commonly call'd *Moveable*) it ought to be put in the same Gender with the former; as, *Cuppâ certare magistrâ. Lex domina morum.* (12)

If these Two Substantives happen to be of different Numbers, if the former be the Name of a Living Creature, the Verb or Adjective will choose to agree with it (13): But in Inanimate Things, they rather agree with the latter. (14)

Sometimes the former Substantive is understood; as, *Populus superamur ab uno*, sub. *nos*. Sometimes it is included in a Possessive; as, *Interest meâ oratoris*, sub. *mei*. (15)

Sometimes the latter Substantive is made into a Genitive Case; as, *Fons Blandusia*, for *Blandusia*: *Urbem Buthroti*, for *Buthrotum*.

A Reciprocal Pronoun is us'd, when we reflect upon that Case which the Verb hath before it, whether Nominative or Accusative. (16)

There is also an improper kind of Concord between the Question and the Answer.

The Answer is put in the same Case that the Question is in; as, *Cui dono lepidum novum libellum?* *Corneli, tibi.* *Quid meritis es?* *Crucem.* And in the same kind of Verb; as, *Quid agitur?* *Studetur.* But yet the different Nature of the Words doth often require, the Answer to be put in a different Case from the Question; as, *Cujus liber?* *Meus.* *Cujum pecus?* *Me libæi.* *Cujus interest?* *Meâ.* *Quanti emisisti librum?* *Solido.*

Notes on CHAP. XLVIII.

(1) **I**T is very usual with Cicero and Caesar, to express the Substantive.

(2) As, *Laomedontem Cleophilæ discipulum, Qui Cleophilus, &c.* Apul.

(3) So, *Quibus de rebus ad me scripsisti quoniam ipse venio coram videbimus, Cic.* *Quas credis esse has non sunt veræ nuptiæ.* Which way of speaking is yet more Elegant, if a Pronoun demonstrative be put into the latter Member of the Sentence ; as, *Quam quisque norit artem, in hac se exerceat, Cic.* Yea, the Poets, when the former Substantive is understood, often put the latter Substantive in the former's place ; and yet the Relative agrees with it, and it is still reckon'd as the latter Substantive ; as, *Orbem quam statuo vestra est, Virg.* *Eunuchum quem dedisti nobis quas turbas dedit ? Ter.* *Naucratem quem conzenire volui, in navi non erat, Plaut.* *Si id te mordet, sumtum filii quem faciunt, Ter. i. e. Si id negotium, nempe sumtus, quem sumtus, &c.*

(4) So, *Sunt quos jurat, Hor.* *Scribo ad vos cum habeo qui ferat, Cic.*

(5) As, *Daret ut catenis fatale monstrum, quæ generosius perire quærens, Hor.* where *quæ* agrees with *Cleopatra*, who is meant by that Monster. *Si tempus est ullum jure necandi homines, quæ multa sunt, Cic.* where *quæ* agrees with *tempora*.

(6) As, *Inter alia prodigia etiam carne pluit : quem imbrem, &c.* Liv.

(7) As, *Nunc mea scripta legis, qui sum summotus ad Istrum, Ovid.* *Id mea minimè refert, qui sum natus maximus, Ter.* *Vestrâ hoc maximè interest, qui cum summâ elegantia atque integritate vixisti, Cic.* Sometimes that Possessive is a Noun ; as, *Stomacho accommodatissimum lac caprinum, quæ fronde magis quam herbâ vescuntur ;* where *caprâ* lying hid under the Possessive *caprinum*, is the Substantive to *quæ*. *De Prætorianâ hereditate quæ quidem mihi magno dolori est (valde enim illum amavi) hoc velim cures, Cic.*

(8) As, *Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest, Cic. sub. mei.* *Furavi Remp. meâ unius operâ esse salvam. Id. Nostras vidisti flentis ocellor, Ovid. sub. mei.* *Cum mea nemo scripta legat vulgo rechiare timentis, Hor.* *Ut mea defunctæ molliter ossa cubent, Ovid.*

(9) This

(9) This is by Attraction, after the manner of the *Greeks*; as, *Quum scribas & aliquid agas quorum consuevisti*, Luceius; for *qua. Istum quem quavis ego sum*, Plaut. *Occurrunt anima, quales neque candidiores Terra tulit*, Hor.

(10) This agreeing with the latter, is in imitation of the *Greeks*; as, Πόλες εἰσι, & οὐρανὸς νομίζει. But it is not always thus; for we read, *Stella quæ Phaëthon dicitur. Unus erat toto nature vultus in orbe, Quem dixere Chaos*. When it agrees with the latter, it is not to be look'd on, as standing between Two Cases of the same Substantive.

(11) Hither is to be referr'd that Structure, when Two Accusative Cases, of the same Person or Thing, follow one Verb, especially of *Calling* or *Esteeming*; as also, *facio, præsto*, or the like; as, *Fulvia lex Fulium auctorem nuncupat. Te facimus fortuna deam. Præsto te virum*.

(12) Hence the Antients express'd the Names of Rivers ending in *er*, or *us*, the word *flumen* following, by a Neuter Gender; as, *Ictis Metaurum flumen*, Hor. *Aut flumen Rhenum*, Id.

(13) As, *Tulliola delicia nostra tuum munusculum flagitat*, Cic. *Dicæarchus delicia nostra disputabat*, Id.

(14) As, *Fama malum quo non aliud velocius ullum*.

(15) So, *Tuum simplicis hominis pectus vidimus. Post iudicium tuum viri eruditissimi*, Plin.

(16) Concerning the Reciprocal, see at large, Chap. XXII. Fig. (7)

C H A P. XLIX.

Of Government.

THE Property of the *Nominative* Case of a Noun or Pronoun Substantive, is, to come before the Verb, to direct it as to its Number and Person; and, sometimes, to be put after a Verb in a way of Apposition (1): But is never govern'd of any thing.

The Property of the *Vocative* Case, is, to Call or Speak to: But is never govern'd of any thing. It is a kind of a Sentence of its self.

The Property of the *Dative* Case, is, to signify *Acquisition*, with the Tokens *To* or *For*: And is us'd indifferently, after any Verb or Adjective; but not properly govern'd of either. Sometimes Two *Datives* of Acquisition, are us'd after the same Verb. (2)

The Property of the *Genitive* Case, is, to be govern'd of a former Substantive, either express'd or understood. (3)

The Property of the *Accusative* Case, is, to follow, and be govern'd of some Verb of an Active Signification, or Preposition immediately going before; or to come before an *Infinitive* Mood of a Verb. (4)

But it must be remembred, that some Verbs choose rather to take after them a *Dative* Case, and some an *Ablative*. (5)

Also, that the Preposition that governs the *Accusative* Case, is often understood (6): And that sometimes two *Accusative* Cases depend upon one Verb (7). And that sometimes the *Accusative* is suppress'd. (*)

The

The Property of the *Ablative Case*, is, always to be govern'd of some Preposition ; except we will say, That some few Verbs do govern an *Ablative Case* after them. (8)

The Preposition that governs the *Ablative Case*, is very often understood. (9)

The most famous Instance of this, is, When the *Ablative Case* of a Noun or Pronoun Substantive, comes along with a Participle express'd or understood, and may be explain'd by a Nominative Case, and a Verb of the *Subjunctive Mood*, the Particles, *When, whilst, if, although, or after that*, being added ; as, *Rege veniente*, The King coming ; that is, *Dum Rex veniret*, Whilst the King came : *Grege amisso*, The Flock being lost ; that is, When the Flock is lost. This is call'd the *Ablative Case Absolute*, as if it depended upon nothing : But it depends on a Preposition, although it be seldom express'd (10). Also, the *Ablative Cases*, *Meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, eujâ*, coming after the Verbs *Interest* and *Refert*, are govern'd of a Preposition understood. (11)

Notes on CHAP. XLIX.

(1) **T**hat is, after Verbs Substantives, and such like. See Chap. X. Fig. (1), and Chap. XLVI. Fig. (12), (13).

(2) The one denotes the *Person*, with the Sign *to* ; the other denotes some *Convenience* or *Inconvenience*, with the Sign *for*. These are most usual after the Verbs *Sum, do, duco, verto, habeo, cedo, puto* ; as, *Do tibi hoc laudi. Verto hoc tibi vitio. Hoc est tibi oneri ; Ducis id tibi honori. Hoc cedit tibi honori. Studionè id sibi habet, an laudi fore putat ?* Ter. The Dative of the thing may be turn'd oftentimes into the Accusative, with the Preposition *in*.

(3) The Genitive Case in *Latin* seems often to depend upon a Noun Adjective, a Verb, a Participle, an Adverb : But that is nothing

thing but a defect of some Substantive, which may be supply'd; or after the manner of the *Greeks*, who often suppress the Preposition that governs a Genitive Case. See Chap. X, and XI. In the Phrase, *Boni consulere rem*, To take a thing in good part, there is a defect of a former Substantive. At length it is thus; *Censeo*, or *interpretor rem esse munus*, or *factum boni*, or *aqui animi*, or *hominis*, Oxf. Gram.

(4) See Chap. IX. Fig. (3).

(5) See Chap. X. Fig. (3), and (4).

(6) See Chap. XLII. Fig. (34).

(7) When Two Accusative Cases, one of the *Person*, another of the *Thing*, come after Verbs of *Asking*, *teaching*, *admonishing*, *concealing*; as, *Doceo te literas*: *Pacem te posco*, &c. the Accusative Case of the thing is not govern'd of the Verb, but of the Prepositions *quoad*, *secundum*, or something answering to the Greek Preposition *κατά*, (for it is a *Greekish* Construction); as, *Posco te quoad*, or *quod ad pacem*. But the Verb then governs a double Accusative Case, when they are both of the same thing. See Chap. XLVIII. Fig. (11).

(*) Whenever a Verb of an Active Transient Signification is found without an Accusative Case following it, we must suppose an Accusative Case to be understood; as, *Nubere viro*, sub. *se*, or *vultum*: *Veni posuere*, sub. *se*: *Cum faciam vitula*, sub. *sacra*: *Appulit*, sub. *navem*: *Amabo*, sub. *te*: *Imponere alicui*, sub. *onus*, or *clitellas*: *Agere*, and *degere*, sub. *viam*: *Inire*, *ire*, *ingredi*, sub. *viam*: *Incipere*, sub. *rem*. So after *Curo*, *servo*, *mitto*. See Chap. X. Fig. (6), and hereafter in *Ellipsis*.

(8) See Chap. X. Fig. (4).

(9) See Chap. XLII. Fig. (34).

(10) However this Ablative Case is call'd *Absolute*, as if it were independent; yet it is always govern'd of the Prepositions, *A* or *Ab*, in the Sense of *post*; as, *Rediit ab hoste superato*; (And then the Participle is commonly of the Perfect Tense:.) Or of *Sub*, *cum*, *in*; which are sometimes express'd; as, *Sole sub ardenti*, Virg. *Agite cum diis bene iuvantibus*, Liv. *quod deo*. A Sentence may be thus us'd like an Ablative Case; as, *Audito regem in Ciliciam tendere*, Sall.

(11) That Preposition, some say, is *in*, according to that of *Terence*; *Disrumpe veniat necne nihil in re est mea*. But that of *Plautus* seems to explain it better; *Mea istuc nihil refert, tua refert gratia*: So that, *Mea refert*, should be at length, *Refert de mea causa*, or *gratia*.

C H A P. L.

*Of the Infinitive Mood, Gerunds and
Supines.*

THE Property of an *Infinitive Mood* in *Latin*, is, to go along with the Accusative Case of a Noun or Pronoun Substantive, and, as it were, to agree with it; especially when the Conjunction *That* cometh before such Noun or Pronoun (1). It is commonly known by the Sign *To* in *English*. If the Sign *To* be not express'd, yet the latter of two Verbs coming immediately together, will be the *Infinitive*, and, as it were, govern'd of the former. (2)

When the *English Infinitive Mood* Active cometh after any Noun, Substantive or Adjective, it is best made by the Gerund in *di*; as, *Tempus ludendi*, Time to play; *Peritus jaculandi*, Skillful to dart, or of darting. But sometimes it is made by the *Infinitive* in *Latin*; as, *Cepit consilium dimittere*, He took Counsel to dismiss: *Avidi promittere bellum*, Greedy to promise War. And rarely by the Gerund in *dum*; as, *Petit diem ad deliberandum*, He desir'd a Day to consider.

When it cometh after any Verb or Participle that betokeneth *Motion*, it is made by the First Supine; or, sometimes, by the Gerund in *dum*; as, *Eo lavatum*, or *ad lavandum*, I go to wash. (3)

When it cometh after any Person of the Verb *Sum*, it will be made by the Participle in *rus*; as, *Sum scripturus*,

pturus, I am to write, or about to write. But if Necessity or Duty be noted, then it will be made by the Gerund in *dum*; as, *Abeyndum est mihi*, I am to go hence; *that is*, I must go hence. (4)

When the *English* of the *Infinitive Mood Passive* comes after the Verb *Sum*, it will be made by the Participle in *dus*; as, *Deus est colendus*, God is to be worshipped. But if it come after such Adjectives as, *Dignus, turpis, facilis, odiosus, horrendus, gravis, optimus*, or the like, it will be made by the latter *Supine*; as, *O multa dictu gravia, perpeſſu aspera!* O many things grievous to be spoken, sharp to be endur'd! (5)

When an *Infinitive Mood* comes after a Verb of *Doubting*, which hath the word *non* before it, it must be expounded by *quin*; as, *Non dubito te facturum*; that is, *Quin facturum es*, I doubt not but that thou wilt do it. But if it have not the word *non* before it, it must be expounded by *an*; as, *Dubito te facturum esse*; that is, *An facturum es*, I doubt whether thou wilt do it.

When an *Infinitive Mood* follows a Verb of *Fearing*, with this word *non*, it is explain'd by *ut*, or *ne non*, and notes a desire of the thing which we fear; as, *Metuo hospitem non subſtare*, or *Metuo ut ſubſtet hospes*. But if it have not the word *non* before it, it is explain'd by *ne*; and notes a dread of the thing which we fear; as, *Timeo patrem redire rure*; or, *Timeo ne pater rure redierit*, I am afraid lest my Father be come out of the Country.

The *Infinitive Mood* may most commonly be resolv'd by *quod* or *ut*; but not indifferently: for *quod* renders a Reason, and is best us'd concerning a thing already done or past; as, *Gaudeo quod tu bene vales*.

Ut

Ut is us'd concerning a thing to come, and denotes the final Cause; as, *Amor impulit ut ad rescriberem*, Love forc'd me to write to thee. After *videor* it is never resolv'd.

The Property of a Gerund in *di*, as of all other Genitive Cases, is to be govern'd of a former Substantive.

The Property of a Gerund in *do*, as of all other Abblative Cases, is to be govern'd of some Preposition express'd or understood; as, *Ignavi à discendo cito deterrentur*, Idle Persons are soon frighted from Learning. But sometimes it is us'd as a Dative Case Acquisitive, with the Sign *For*; as, *Aptus scribendo*, Fit for writing: *Petrus est solvendo*, that is, *Idoneus solvendo*, *Peter* is sufficient or meet for Paying.

The Property of the Gerund in *dum*, is, to be govern'd of some Preposition, like any other Accusative Case; especially, *Ad, ob, inter, ante*. And it is also Elegantly us'd like a Nominative Case, when *Necessity* is signify'd, and the words *Must* or *Ought* are in the *English*; as, *Abeundum est mihi*, I must go hence (6). Any Gerund may be turn'd into a Participial in *dus*. (*)

The Property of all Gerunds, is, to govern such Case as the Verbs that they come of. But after a Gerund in *di*, is sometimes us'd a Genitive Case Plural; as, *Concessa est licentia diripiendi pomorum*. But this is easily solv'd, if we look upon the Gerund as a Verbal Noun, as indeed it is: for so it is no other than, *Licentia direptionis pomorum*.

The Property of the First Supine, is, to signify like the *Infinitive Mood Active*, and to be govern'd of a Verb or Participle betokening *Motion to a Place*; as, *Eo amatum*, I go to love.

The

The Property of the latter Supine, is, to signifie like an *Infinitive* Mood Passive, and to be govern'd of some Adjective; as, *Dignus laudatu*, Worthy to be praised. (7)

The Property of Participles, is, like all other Adjectives, to agree with their Substantives in Case, Gender, and Number; and to govern such Case after them, as the Verbs that they come of. If they govern a different Case, they become Nouns. See Chap. XI.

The Dative Case after Participles in *dus*, is better than the Ablative with a Preposition.

The *English* Participle of the Present Tense, which ends in *ing*, often comes without any Substantive: And then it is made by the Gerund in *di* or *do*. (8)

Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Interjections, govern no Case: But yet they are added and accommodated to one Case, rather than another. (9)

Notes on CHAP. L.

(1) SEE Chap. IX. Fig. (3). The Truth is, the *Infinitive* Mood is like to a Noun *Aptore*, always of the Neuter Gender, and never varying its Termination: and so, sometimes, it is instead of a Nominative Case; as, *Vivere ipsum turpe est nobis*, Cic. Sometimes of a Vocative; as, *O vivere nostrum!* Sometimes of a Genitive; as, *Consilium cepit de se equitatum dimittere*, Cic. for *dimittendi* or *dimissionis*. Sometimes of a Dative; as, *Ætas mollis & apta regi*, for *regimini* or *rektioni*. Sometimes of an Accusative; as, *Scriptis te cupere: Da mihi bibere: Habeo dicere: Amo ludere*. Sometimes of an Ablative; as, *Dignus amari*, for *amore*. If it depend upon a Noun, it stands for a Genitive Case; as, *Tempus accedere: Avidi promittere bellum*, Stat. If upon a Verb, for an

an Accusative Case; as, *Ut maturarem venire*, for *adventum*. It depends upon some Preposition, when the Sentence may be explain'd by *quod* or *quia*; as, *Gratulor ingenium non latuisse tuum*: that is, *Ob non latuisse*, or *Quod non latuerit*. So in all those Greekish Expressions, when the Infinitive Mood is made to depend upon an Adjective; as, *Durus componere versus*: *Celer irasci*, &c. in all which, *ad* is Ellipted.

(2) See Chap. XXIII. Fig. (14).

(3) Sometimes the Motion is very occult, as in the Verbs *Do*, *loco*, *voco*; as, *Pamphilum cautatum provocemus*, Ter. *Virginem nuptum locavi*, Id. *Non tu me argento, opinor, dedisti nuptum*, sed viro, Plaut. And, indeed, not only after Verbs of Motion, but after any Verbs that love an Accusative Case with *ad*; as, *Invitavit ad prandendum*.

(4) When Necessity is noted, and *must* or *ought* are in the English; if the Verb be of a Neutral Signification, if it be not made by *debeo* or *oportet*, it will be made by the Gerund in *dum*, with the Verb *est* set impersonally, and a Dative Case; as, *Abeundum est mihi*, I must go hence. But if the Verb be of an Active, and purely Transitive Signification, then the Gerund in *dum* is best turn'd into a Participle in *dus*; and the Accusative that should follow it, is turn'd into a Nominative, and becomes the Substantive to it; as, *Via lethi calcanda est*; nor, *Calcandum est viam lethi*: *Littera scribenda sunt*; rather than, *Scribendum est mihi litteras*. Yet, in old Authors, we commonly find it otherwise; as, *Canes acres & paucos habendum*, Var. *In festurâ dandum potius bordeaceos quam triticeos panes*, Id. *Aeternas quoniam pœnas in morte timendum*, Lucret. *Omnia esse quæ pater jussisset parendum*, Gell. *Aus pacem Trojano à rege petendum*, Virg.

(5) Instead of this latter Supine, we sometimes find the Gerund in *dum*; as, *Cibus ad concoquendum facillimus*, Cic. But this is rare.

(6) Vid. supra Fig. (4).

(*) The Gerunds of Verbs of a Transitive Signification, are Elegantly turn'd into Participials in *dus*, and then they agree in Case, Gender, and Number, with the Substantive that follows them. If it be a Gerund in *di*, it becomes a Genitive Case of a Participle; as, *Non feci hoc inflammandi tui causâ, sed testificandi amoris mei*, Cic. By the way observe, that the Ablative Cases, *causâ* and *gratiâ*, when they signify the same with *propter*, are always set after the Gerund in *di*; as, *Auscultandi causâ*, not *Causâ auscultandi*. If it be a Gerund in *do*, it becomes an Ablative or a Dative Case of a Parti-

Participle ; as, *Deus in faciendo homine imaginem suam sequutus est*, Cic. Interjecto spatio, quod vulneribus curandis, supplendoque exercitui satis esset, Liv. If a Gerund in *dum*, then of the Accusative Case ; as, *Ad exploranda loca proficiscitur*, Cæf. But especially, this way of speaking is us'd, when a Gerund in *dum*, of a Verb Transitive standing for a Nominative Case, governs after it an Accusative Case ; as, instead of *Timendum est pænas* ; they say, *Pæna timendæ sunt*.

(7) Supines are indeed Nouns Verbals, and are govern'd of Prepositions understood. See Chap. XXXVIII. Yet we find the Preposition sometimes express'd ; as, *Non omnis tempestas apes ad pastum prodire longius patitur*, Var.

(8) If it come without a Substantive, and have the Sign *Of* with it, it will be made by the Gerund in *di* ; as, *A fit season of playing, Opportunitas ludendi*, i. e. *lusionis* : Except that *Of*, which may be turn'd into *With* ; for that is a Sign of the Ablative Case, and must be made by the Gerund in *do*. If it come without a Substantive, and have any Preposition joyn'd with it that serves to the Ablative Case, or be put Acquisitively with the Sign *For*, it is made by the Gerund in *do* ; I am weary with walking, *Defessus sum ambulando*, i. e. *ab ambulatione* : This Pen is fit for writing, *Hæc calamus est aptus, or idoneus scribendo*.

(9) Of the suppos'd Government of *Adverbs* and *Interjections*, see Chap. XI. Fig. (4), and Chap. XLIII.

CHAP.

C H A P. LI.

Of the Figures of Syntax.

THE Figures of *Syntax* may be reduc'd to these Five; viz. *Pleonasmus*, *Syllepsis*, *Hyperbaton*, *Hellenismus*, and *Ellipsis*.

Pleonasmus is, when there is a Word in a Sentence more than needs; as, *Magis majores nugas agere*, Plaut. (1)

Syllepsis, or *Synthesis*, is, when there is an Agreement in Sense, but not in Words; as, *Samnitium duo millia cæsi; ubi est scelus qui me perdidit: Turbarunt. Aperito aliquis ostium. Absente nobis; presente nobis. Insperanti nobis; Merenti nobis*, Tibul, &c. *Pars merse tenuere ratem*, Virg. (2)

Hyperbaton is, when the order of Words is disturb'd and confounded: of which Confusion there are several kinds. (3)

Hellenismus is, when the *Latins* imitate a *Greek* Construction, either in Attraction or Government; as, *Cum aliquid agas quorum consuevisti. Illum ut vivat optant. Expleri mentem nequit. Os humerosque deo similis. Docce te literas. Abstine irarum. Regnavit populorum. Gustavit mellis. Da meus ocellus. Seu pius Aeneas eripuisse ferunt. Letari prætrepidum cor, for Usque ad letari*. (4)

Ellipsis is, when any Word is left out in a Sentence, that ought to be there; as, *Ubi ad Diane veneris*, sub. *templum*. *Hectoris Andromache*, sub. *uxor*. *Prudentis est dissimulare multa*, sub. *proprium*. *Agensat me furti*, sub. *Crimine*. (5)

Notes on CHAP. LI.

(1) **SO**, *Oportuit præseisse me ante*, Ter. *Retrò redit : Retrò re-*
ferri, Virg. Sometimes *potius* is redundant ; as, *Se ab om-*
nibus desertos, potius quam abs te defensos esse malunt, Cic.
 There seems to be a *Pleonasm*, when they say, *Omnia quæcunque ;*
ubique terrarum ; nemo homo ; nullus alter. When they say, *Vi-*
vere vitam ; servire servitutem ; nulla res rerum, it is a *Pleonasm*, if
 we respect *Usage* ; yet the want of the latter Word is really an *Ellip-*
sis, if we respect *Syntax*. The Dative Cases, *Mibi, tibi, sibi*, are of-
 ten redundant ; as, *Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio*. Yet it must be con-
 fess'd, that they have many times an *Acquisitive Sense*, when they
 are ordinarily said to be us'd *Pleonastically*. The expressing of *Me,*
te, se, illum, nos, vos, before an *Infinitive Mood*, (as, *Me id facere*
studeo, Plaur. *Mori me malim*, Ter.) is so far from being a *Pleo-*
nasm in *Syntax*, that the want of them indeed is an *Ellipsis*. The
 most famous *Pleonasm* is, when a Noun and a Pronoun meet in the
 same Sentence ; as, *Posthumius autem, de quo senatus decrevit ut*
statim in Ciliciam iret, is negat se iurum sine Catone, Cic. where
 the Pronoun *is*, is redundant. *Sed revocare gradum, &c. Hic labor,*
 &c. Virg. So we sometimes speak in *English*. See the First Sentence
 in the *General Absolution* in the *Liturgy*. There is somewhat a
 strange *Pleonasm* found in Negations : For whereas it is the man-
 ner of the *Latins*, to make Two Negatives to affirm ; (as, *Nequeo*
non mirari. Nemo non stupidus. Nec nocturna quidem carpentes
pensa puella Nescire hunc mem, Virg.) Sometimes we find them to
 deny, and one of the Negatives is redundant ; as, *Negat neque ejus*
patrem scire quis fuerit, Ter. *Nescis nec in pace nec in bello vi-*
vere, Cic. *Nulla neque annem libavit quadrupes, nec graminis at-*
git herbam, Virg. for *Nec ulla quadrupes libavit annem. Neque*
haud tu dicat tibi non prædictum cave, Ter.

(2) *Syllepsis*, or *Conceptio*, is, when something is put in one
 Clause of a Sentence, which must be understood in the other ; but
 with the change of Case, Gender, Number, Person, Mood, or Tense.
 Sometimes with the change of the Word ; as, *Ipse Quirinali lituo*
(sub. insignis) parvaque sedebat Succinctus trabea, Virg. *Disce puer*
virtutem ex me, verumque laborem, fortunam ex aliis, (sub. quare)
Id. Sacra manus viscosque deos, (sub. gestas) *parvumque nepotem*
Ipse trahit, Id. But the chief sorts of *Syllepsis* are, when the Words
 differ, either in Gender only, or Number only, or in both at once.

In Gender only ; as, *Ut illum Dii Deaque omnes sensum perdant, qui me remoratus est hodie !* Ter. *Quinetiam insuper scelus postquam ludificatus est virginem,* Id. In Number only ; as, *Alterum in alterius multatos sanguine cernam,* Virg. *Missi magnis de rebus aterque legati,* Cic. In Gender and Number at once ; as, *Pars in carcerem actis, pars bestis obiectis,* Sall. Concerning the Relative *Syllepsis*, (viz. when the Relative is referr'd to an Antecedent no where express'd ;) and concerning a *Syllepsis* join'd to a perfect *Ellipsis*, (as, *In Eunuchum suam, sub. fabulam ;*) or to a *Zeugma*, (as, *Philippi vim atque arma toti Græcia pavendam metuendamque esse ;* where the Adjective agrees with the Gender of the former Substantive ;) see the Chapter about the Syntax of the Substantive and Adjective, and of the Relative, and the Notes upon them.

(3) *Confusion* or *Disorder* in a Sentence, is made many ways : As, 1. By *Anastrophe*, or the Inversion of the Words ; as, *Mecum, for cum me : His accensa super, for super his : Maria omnia circum : Italiam contra.* And very frequently this happens amongst other Prepositions. Sometimes it happens amongst Adverbs and Conjunctions ; as, *Diu quum esset pugnatum,* Cæsar. *Huc face ad me ut venias,* Ter. *Enim non finam,* Id. *Orbis ut cantus referatque ludos,* Hor. *Ore pedes tetigitque crura,* Id. *Messalam terrâ dum sequiturque mari,* Tibul. *Cum faber incertus scamnum faceretne Priapum,* Hor. *Impius ex quo Tydides sedenim scelerumque inventor Ulysses, for sed enim ex quo,* Virg. *Insanire libet quoniam,* Id. Sometimes it happens to the Relative ; as, *Vix apud me sum, vigilans qui propè dormio,* Plaut. *Mater quod suasit sua, adolescens mulier fecit,* Ter. 2. By *Tmesis*, or the cutting of a Compound Word asunder, by putting in one or more Words between the Parts ; as, *Per mihi inquam gratum feceris,* Cic. *Quo me cunque rapit tempestas. Jamque adeo super unus eram. Est enim munus ejus non ingenis solum, sed laterum etiam & virium,* Cic. 3. By *Parenthesis*, when the Sense is interrupted by the Interposition of some other Word or Words ; as, *Tityre, dum redeo, (brevis est via) pasce capellas,* Virg. 4. By *Hypallage*, or a mutual Change of Cases ; as when the former is express'd in the Case of the latter, and the latter in the Case of the former ; as, *Formas mutatas in nova corpora, for corpora mutata in novas formas,* Ovid. *Dare classibus Austros, for classes Austros,* Virg. *Trama figura, for figura trama,* Pers. 5. By *Hystero-logia*, when there is a Preposterous Order of the Clauses ; as, *Et torrere parant flammis & frangere saxo.* Or when a Preposition is not join'd to the Case to which it serves, but to a Verb, as if it were compounded with it ; as, *Tyriam qui adveneris urbem,* Virg.

Virg. *Atque votis summas levibus perlabitur undas*, Id. *Innati tri-viii*, Hor. 6. By *Synchysis*, when the Words of a Sentence are plac'd confusedly and disorderly; as, *Saxa vocant Itali, mediis quæ in fluminibus, aras*, Virg. *Bona si quis iudice condiderit laudatur Casare*. Sometimes the Words of two Clauses are mingled; as, *Namque pilâ leppis inimicum & ludere crudis*, Hor. *Serpentes atque videres Infernas errare canes*, Id. 7. By *Anacoluthon* or *Inconsequens*, when the latter Clause does not agree to the former; as, *Nam omnes nos, quibus est alicundè aliquis objectus labor; omne quod interea tempus, priusquam id rescitum est, lucro est*, Ter. for *nobis omnibus*. In *Arcadia*, *scio me esse spectatum suum, quæ præ pinguitudine carnis, non modo surgere non possit, sed etiam ut in ejus corpore forex, excessâ carne, nidum fecisset & peperisset mures*, Var. de R. R. for, *sed etiam adeo pinguem, ut in ejus corpore, &c.*

(+) There is an Imitation of the Greeks in most of the Figures which the *Latins* use: But they are the *Hellenisms* in *Syntax*, which are here to be spoke to. *Syntax* is either in *Concord* or *Government*. *Concord* is either between the Nominative Case and the Verb, or between the Substantive and the Adjective. *Hellenisms* in *Concord* between the Nominative Case and the Verb, are: 1. When the Verb standing between two Nominative Cases is of the same Number with the latter; as, *Amantium ira amoris redintegratio est. Pelus robora fiunt. Insidia sunt pudor ille mea*, Ovid. 2. When a Nominative Case comes before an *Infinitive* Mood, instead of an *Accusative*; as, *Seu pius Æneas eripuisse ferunt*. 3. When a Nominative Case comes after such *Infinitive* Mood, especially after such Verbs as *Sentio, dico, aio*, and the like; as, *Sabinus ille, quem videtis, hospites, ait fuisse multo celerrimus*, Catull. *Sedenim quia rettulit Ajax Esse Fovis proncepos*, Ovid. *Sensit medios illapsus in hostes*, Virg. *Quæ sese optavit inhoneste parare hic divitias, potius quàm in patriâ honestè pauper vivere*, Ter. *Tutumque putavi Fam bonus esse socer*, Luc. *Acceptum refero versibus esse nocens*, Ovid. Sic *Græci*, *Καὶ αὐτὸν αἰς ἀνθρώπου ἐν κομιμῆσιν*, Iloc. *Hellenisms* in *Concord* between the Substantive, and the Adjective, are: 1. When a Substantive is us'd instead of an Adjective; as, *Ἀνὴρ Βασιλεὺς*: So, *Hinc populum lætè regem belloque superbum*, Virg. *Homo rex; uxor anus*, &c. 2. When the Adjective makes his Substantive to be of the Genitive Case; as, *Τὰ κατὰ τῶν ζῴων*, Iloc. So, *Plani piscium quibus cauda non obest*, Plin. *Surdis etiam verum sua cuique sunt remedia*, Id. *Nigræ lanarum. Canum degeneres*, Id. 3. When the Relative agrees with the latter Substantive in Gender; as, *Πῶλες αἰοί, ὅς ἐωλες τομίζεις*, Luc. So, *Homines tuentur illum globum quæ*

terra

erra dicitur; where *terra* draws the Relative to agree with it in Gender, which, according to the *Latins*, should have agreed with *globum*. That of *Virgil* is an harsher *Attraction*; *Saxum, antiquum, ingens campo qui foris jacebat Limes agro positus*; where *qui* is for *quod*, (*Oxf. Gram.*) being drawn into the Masculine Gender by *campo*, according to some; but rather by *limes*. *Hellenistical Attractions* of Case are, 1. When the Relative draws the Antecedent into its own Case; as, Ἀγρίης παρ' ᾧ ἐνιδύμεν Μυδωνί Κυρσίω, *AB. Apost.* for Μυδωνί Κυρσίω. So the *Latins*; *Urbem quam statuo vestra est*, *Virg.* *Istum, quem quaris, ego sum*, *Pl.* *Naucratem quem convenire volui, in navi non erat*, *Id.* 2. When the Antecedent draws the Relative into its own Case; as, Χρῆμασι βίβλοις διεῖχθω. So in *Latin*; *Quum scribas & aliquid agas quorum consuevisti*, *Cic.* for *quæ*; because of the Antecedent *eorum*, understood. 3. It is an usual *Hellenism*, for a Substantive, standing between Two Verbs, to be drawn into the Accusative Case by the former, when indeed it should be the Nominative Case to the latter; as, *Illum ut vivat optant*, *Ter.* *Hæc me ut confidam faciunt*, *Cic.* *Fac me ut sciam*, *Ter.* *Metuo lenonem ne quid suo luat capiti*; for *ne leno*, *Id.* *Patrem atque matrem viverent vellem tibi*, *Plaut.* But this last may be solv'd thus; *Quod ad patrem atque matrem, vellem ut viverent tibi.* *Hellenisms* in Government are, 1. When Verbs or Adjectives take Cases after them, in imitation of the *Greeks*. A Genitive; as, Περσῶν ἐβασίλευσε, *Thucyd.* So in *Latin*; *Agrestium regnavit populorum*, *Hor.* Ἀἴης πόντος, *Isoc.* So, *Define curatum*, *Hor.* *Abstine irarum*, &c. Thus in *Latin* do also Verbs of *Admiring*, *caring for*, *neglecting*, *driving away*, *pardon- ing*, *freeing*, *communicating*. Χείρας ἀγίας εἰματό, *Eurip.* Καθα- γὸς εὐχίας, *Plato.* So in *Latin*; *Integer vire, purus sceleris*, *Hor.* A Dative; as, Περὶ ταύτης ἐμαχόμεναι σοι, *Aristoph.* *Cui nec cer- taverit ulla*, *Virg.* *Dum novus est etiam capto pugnemus amori*, *Ovid.* Οὐ δὲ πρὶ πάντα διακτά, *Luc.* *Ut vobis decet*, *Ter.* 2. When an Accusative Case is us'd after a Verb Passive, or an Adjective, without the help of any Preposition, κατὰ or περί being understood; as, Τὸν δὲ τρώϊον ἐκ εἰδ' ὅμοιοι, *Theoc.* This is frequent amongst the *Latins*, the Poets especially; as, *Expleri mentem nequit*, *Virg.* *Os humerosque deo similis*, *Id.* *Faciem mutatus & ora*, *Id.* *Pacem te poscimus*. *Docet te literas*. So the *Latins* say; *Multum, paulu- lum, plurimum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquid, quippiam, ca- tera, quid, id, istuc*; as, *Id ætatis, istuc ætatis*, *Ter.* *Cætera ful- zus*, *Hor.* As in *Greek*, τὸ πρῶτον, τὸ τίλ. The Figure *Ellipsis* will solve and explain all these. 3. When an *Infinitive Mood* is us'd with *ut*, or *so*, that *ut* must be understood to it, after the man-

P

ner

ner of the Greek ὅτι : as, *Neu Babylonios Tentâris numerosi, ut melius quicquid erit pati* ; for *ut patiaris*, (ὅτι εἴποι) Hor. *Ei pe-lore lævo Excunias gustas, latari prætrepidum cor*, Pers. for *usque ad latari* ; or *ut latari*, for *ut laetetur*. So after an Adjective ; *Pestis acerba boum, pecorique aspergere virus*, Virg. for *ut aspergat* ; where *ut* for ὅτι is understood. Hither must be refer'd such Expre-ssions as these, which occur ordinarily amongst the Poets ; *Dederatque comas diffundere vento*, Virg. for ὅτι, or *ut diffunderes*, sub. se. *Ille suo moriens dat habere nepoti*, Id. *Magnum dat ferre ta-lentum*, Id. 4. When the Ablative Case Absolute is the Ablative of that very Word that came before the Verb ; as, ἄν' ἀπορία μὴ εὐδαιμῶν, &c. ὁπυῖντος μὴ ὁδὸς εὐεργίης, &c. Plato. So in Latin ; *Non potes effagere hujus culpæ penam, te patrono* ; *Marcus adhi-bendus est*, Qu. Tul. *Eum me iudice errorem dissolvam tibi*, Gell. 5. When *in* signifying *in*, governs an Accusative Case ; or *into*, an Ablative. Examples of the Former ; *Quum nostros portus in præ-donum fuisse potestatem scialis*, Cic. *Nunc vero mihi in mentem fuit*, Pl. Of the Latter ; *Inturpam in adibus*, Pl. *Rapuitque in fomite flammam*, Virg. *Quamque oculos in pectore posses Inse-rere*, Ovid. 6. When after Verbs Passives, (to which some add Verbs of Taking away) a Dative is us'd instead of an Ablative with a Preposition ; as, ἡρπῆσαι μοι. So, *Nec cernitur ulli*, Virg. 7. When a Nominative Case is us'd instead of a Vocative ; as, *Vos ô patricius sanguis*, Pers. (except we understand *emus*, as *Sanctius* will have *ens* to be understood in *Miserere mei Deus* ; *Deus, Deus exaudi me*, &c.) or a Vocative instead of a Nominative ; as, *Stemmate quod Thusco ramum millefimo ductis*, Pers. *Censoreme tuum vel quod tra-beat saluti*, Id. *Quibus Hector ab oris Expectate venis* ? Virg.

(5) Ellipsis is the largest Figure of Syntax ; the want of the Con-sideration of which Figure, has occasion'd the needless and grievous Multiplication of Rules of Government in Lilly, and other Gram-mars. We will here, therefore, briefly consider, how almost all the Rules of Government in Lilly's Grammar, are vacated, and made superfluous by this Figure : *Memento mori*, is Elliptically spoken for *Tu memento te mori*. *Stulius stultia loquitur*, for *Homo stulius stultia negotia loquitur*. *Vir sapi qui pauca loquitur*, for *Qui vir pauca loquitur*. *Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum*, for *Homo felix quem bonum pericula faciunt cautum*. *Ubi ad Dia-nam veniri*, sub. ad. *Hectoris Andromache*, sub. uxor. *Deiphobe Ghuri*, sub. filia. *Huius video Byrrham*, sub. seruum. *Pater meus vit amat me puerum*, for *Pater meus ens*, or *existens vir*, *amat me. etiam*, or *existentiam puerum*. *Multum lucri*, for *Multum negoti-um lucri*. *Puer bona indole*, sub. cum. *Opus est mihi tuo iudicio*, for

for *opus*, (or *opera*, or *negotium*) *est mihi in tuo iudicio*. *Cupidus auri*, sub. *causa*. *Peritus belli*, sub. *respectu*. *Audax ingenii*, sub. *ratione*. *Aliquis nostrum*, sub. *è numero*. *Cicero oratorum eloquentissimus*, sub. *è numero*. *Leo fortissimum animalium*, for *Fortissimum animal è numero animalium*: (For so Pliny speaks at length; *Goprea* & *coturnices*, *animalia è numero animalium placidissima*.) *Indus fluminum maximus*, sub. *è numero* only. *Frigidior glacie*, sub. *præ*. As in the Positive they say, *Frigidus præ glacie*: *Præ nobis beatus*. *Doctior multo*, sub. *præ*. *Maximus ætate*, sub. *ab* or *præ*. *Amicus*, *cognatus*, *affinis*, *par*, *similis*, are us'd Substantively, when they take a Genitive Case after them: So we may say, *Par ejus*, as well as *Frater ejus*. *Commune omnium animalium*, suba *negotium*. *Immunis mali*, sub. *à re*. *Aliena consilii*, sub. *ratione*. *Turris alta centum pedes*, sub. *ad*. *Areas latas pedum denum*, sub. *mensurâ*. *Libet crassus tribus polliceibus*, sub. *à* or *in*. *Crura thy-mi plene*, sub. *de*. *Nulla epistola inanis re aliquâ*, sub. *à* or *ab*. *Ditissimus agrorum*, sub. *re*, (as *res voluptatum* is us'd for *voluptates*, Plaur.) or else *ratione* or *respectu*. *Pallidus irâ*, sub. *ab*. So, *Ab obice seivior ibat*, Ovid. *Dignus honore*, sub. *de*. *Dignus honoris*, sub. *re*. *Expedi bonas esse vobis*, sub. *vos*: For it is Hellenistical, when we say, *Natura beatis omnibus esse dedit*. *Hæc vestra est parvis*, sub. *vestris*. *Inspicientis est dicere non putâram*, sub. *parvis* or *proprium*: which Cicero expresses; *Sapientis est proprium nihil quod pœnitere possit facere*. *Parvi ducitur probitas*, for *Ducitur res parvi pretii*, or *avis*: (as, *Codex acceptis & expensis*, sub. *avis*.) *Magis æstimabat pecuniam*, for *Rem magni pretii*. *Magna ubique virtus æstimanda est*, sub. *pro*. *Furti se alligat*, sub. *crimine*. *Scele-ris condemnat genitorum suum*, sub. *causâ* or *ratione*. *Condemnato eodem ego te crimine*, sub. *de*; as, *De beneficiis accusabantur*. When it is a general VVord, as *Crimen*, *scelus*, *maleficium*, it is ever express'd by the Genitive Case, or the Ablative, without a Preposition, Oxf. Gram. *Miserere mei, Deus*, sub. *causâ* or *respectu*. *Reminiscor historiam*, sub. *memoriam*; (as, *Pueritiæ memoriam recordari ultimam*, Clc.) as, *Venit in mentem potestatis & aquitatis tuæ*, sub. *memoria*, or *recordatio*. *Romani potiti sunt armorum*, sub. *facultate*, or *potentia*. *Rogo te pecuniam*. *Doceo te literas*, sub. *ad*, quod *ad*, *secundum*, answering to the Greek *κατά*. Before the Ablative Cases of the Cause and Manner of Doing, are understood the Prepositions *A*, *ab*, *e*, *de*, *ex*, *præ*, *in*, or *cum*; which are often found express'd. Before the Ablative Case of the Instrument, the Preposition *cum* is understood; tho' it be seldom, if ever, express'd. *Vendidi auro*, sub. *pro*. *Quanti, tanti, pluris, minoris, tantivis, quantivis, quantilibet, quantumcunque mercatus es hunc equum*, sub. *pro pretio*

*pretio aris. Valet tanti, sub. pretium aris. Expleo te fabulis, sub. de; as we read, De quibus volumina impleta sunt, Cic. Quasi tu hujus indigeas patris, sub. presentia. Impletur veteris Bacchi, sub. liquore or re. Prafero hunc multis gradibus, sub. a or ab. Imperante Augusto natus est Christus, sub. sub. Audito regem venisse, sub. ab. Deo juvante, sub. cum; as, Agite cum diis bene juvenibus, Liv. Agrotat animo, sub. in. Candet dentes, sub. secundum or quoad. Qui angas te animi, sub. dolore, curâ, or cogitatione. Nemo omnibus horis sapit, sub. in. Hyemem totam stertis, sub. per. Mulier quadam abhinc triennium commigravit huc, sub. ante, Ter. Superioribus diebus, sub. in. Pedem hinc ne discesseris, sub. ad, per, or circa. Vixit Londini; Quid Roma faciam? sub. urbe, or oppido: This is before a Proper Name of the First or Second Declension. Sometimes the word *urbe* or *oppido* is express'd; as, *Cassius in oppido Antiochia cum omni exercitu, &c. Cic. Militavit Carthagini, or Carthagine, sub. in: for Carthagini is an old Ablative Case; as also is ruri. When the Proper Name is of the Third Declension, or Plural Number only, it is us'd thus in the Ablative Case, with the Preposition suppress'd. Some common Names of Place, imitate this Syntax; as, Procumbit humi bos, sub. solo: as, Nam multis succensa locis ardent sola terra, Lucret. Militia enutritus est, sub. tempore. Domi bellicue otiosi vivitis, sub. loco. Maxima cum vellet terra procumbere, quæstia est, Ovid; sub. solo. Eo Romam, Athenas, domum, rus, sub. ad. Discessit Londino, Abiit domo, sub. a: as, Ab Alexandria discederet, Cic. Interest omnium recte agere. Tuâ refert teipsum nosse, sub. re or gratia. Nostri nosmet panitet. Me civitatis tædet, &c. sub. causâ. Bonis prognata parentibus. Sate sanguine divum. Nate deâ, &c. sub. a or ab, which are often express'd. As for the rest, see the Doctrine of the Adverb, and the Interjection.**

There are also many other VVords Ellipsed, or understood in *Phrasical Syntax*; the Knowledge of which is not so Essential to a *Grammarians*, as indeed serves to the Accomplishing of an *Orator*. Such are these, amongst Nouns Substantives; *Annis, ars, arum. Campus, carcer, (olim neutrum) caro, castra, clitellas, cælum, consilium, copia, corona. Dens, dies, dii, domus, domum, domesticus or famulus, (as, nemo tuorum.) Extâ. Facultas, febris, festa, fœmina, finis, frumenta, fœnera. Ingenium, iter, iudices, iudicium. Laudem, libri, lineas, literas, locus, loca, ludi. Malum, mare, mensis, modia, modo, mortem. Navim, nummus, numero, (besides that which is understood after a Comparative and Superlative Adjective; as, Verceres, quorum fuerunt Aristoteles & Theodectes, Quint.) nuncium, nux. Officium, operæ, opus, oratio, osium, ovis. Pars, passus, pecuniarum;*

cuniarum, pradium, puer, puella. Raster, ratio, rem-familiarem. Seruo, serous, seftertium, signum, solum. Tabellæ, taberna, tabulæ. tempus, tentoria, terra. Vada, vasa, verba, via, vinum, vir, virga. Amongst Adjectives; *Aliquis, alius, ambo. Bona* (in bono frugi.) *Centena. Is, for talis or tantus;* (as, *Homo improbus, sed cui paucos ingenio pares intenas.*) *Nullus. Solus, singuli,* (as, *In dies, in horas.*) *Unus, utile or commodum;* as in *Prospicio tibi.* Amongst Verbs; *Adspicio, amet, adest, audire or intelligere. Canere, capis. Dico, (as, male audit) dico, decet or oportet, debere. Esse, esto, or fac, da, pone. Facio. Ire. Loqui. Moneo. Obsecro, oro, (as before utinam.) Paro. Respondeo, Rogas? Sum* in all the Moods. *Timeo. Verumne est?* Amongst Pronouns; *Ego, tu, nos, vos,* before Verbs; *Me, te, se,* before Infinitive Moods. *Te and se* sometimes after Verbs Transitives. *Allo, Ille, illi, idem, ea, qui;* (as, *Urbs antiqua fuit, Tyris coluere coloni.*) Amongst Participles; *Dicens, dicentes, diſcurus. Ens. Potens or sufficiens, scripta, ſciturus. Maceratum or emollitum. Spectans.* Examples of all which are to be seen in *Linæer, and Oxſ. Gram.* But particularly, note these few Particles following to be often suppress'd in a Sentence: *Magis, or potius,* after a Greekish manner; as, *Oratio fuit precibus quam jurgio similis, Liv. Si quisquam est qui placere cupiat bonis quam plurimis, sub. potius, Ter.*

Ac, or atque, often understood after *ſimul;* as, *Simul exſurrexi ſumus viſa illa contemnimus, Cic.*

Si is understood before a Verb of the Subjunctive Mood; as, *Tu quoque magnam Partem opere in tanto, ſinceret dolor, lcare, haberes, Virg. Graculus eſuriens in cælum, jufferis, ibi.*

Ut, that, before a Subjunctive Mood; as, *Tu ſac ſimiles, Cato.*

Ne before a Subjunctive Mood; as, *Cave dixeris.*

Eſto before *ut;* as, *Protinus ut redeas, for Eſto ut redeas.*

Oro before *ut;* as, *Ut Syre te magnus perdat Jupiter, for Oro ut.*

An; as, *Obſit, proſit, nihil curant, velim nolim.*

Non after *non modo, or non ſolum;* as, *Alexander non modo parcus, ſed etiam liberalis, for Non parcus. Ut non modo civitas, ſed ne vicini quidem proximi ſentiant, Cic. Non modo illi invidetur ætati, verum etiam favetur, Id. for Non modo non invidetur.*

Nempe is often Elliptical.

There are many *Pleonasms* and *Ellipses* in the *English* Tongue, which are fit to be taught a Stranger, that learns to ſpeak *English;* and which muſt be often inculcated by the Maſter upon his *English* Scholar too, whilſt he is Making *English* into *Latin;* as, *I will give the Maſter a Book, ſub. to. I will go and read, ſub. will. I will not betray you as he did, ſub. betray.* With many more, which are not of this Place.

C H A P. LII.

Certain Rules or Canons, briefly comprehending the chiefest Fundamentals of Latin Syntax.

I. **E**very Sentence consists of a Nominative Case, and a Verb. (1)

II. Every Verb finite hath before it a Nominative Case. (2)

III. Every Verb of an Active Signification hath after it an Accusative Case. (3)

IV. When an *Infinitive* Mood comes by it self in a Sentence, some Verb or Participle, upon which it depends, is understood. (4)

V. Every Adjective must have its Substantive. (5)

VI. Every Relative rehearseth its Antecedent, and agrees with it so rehearsed. (6)

VII. Every Genitive Case is govern'd of a former Substantive. (7)

VIII. Every Accusative Case either follows a Verb of an Active Signification, or a Verbal, or is govern'd of some Preposition: except that Accusative, that comes before an *Infinitive* Mood, or follows it; as, *Agnoscamus Deum esse, & verè dici patrem luminum*; We acknowledge *God* to be, and to be truly called the Father of Lights; or, That *God* is, and is truly called. (8)

IX. Every Ablative Case is govern'd of some Preposition. (9)

X. Every Adjective and Adverb of the Comparative Degree, refers to some Positive, and hath an Ablative Case after it, or the Word *quam*, than. (10)

Notes

Notes on CHAP. LII.

(1) **T**herefore if the Verb be not express'd, it must be supply'd ; as, *Dii meliora*, sub. *faciant*. *Rectè Cicero*, sub. *disint*. Especially the Verb *sum* ; as, *Sed vos qui tandem*, sub. *estis*. *Apposition* is a kind of *Ellipsis*.

(2) But the Nominative Case is often understood ; especially the Nominative Cases, *Ego*, *tu*, *nos*, and *vos* ; and *illi*, or *homines*, before Verbs, whose Signification belongs only to Men ; and before Verbs commonly call'd *Impersonals*, whether of the Active or Passive Voice : As when we say, *Delectat*, *deceat*, *juvat*, &c. we understand *id* ; or else make the Sentence, or a Clause of it, to be the Nominative Case ; as, *Oportet mendacem esse memorem* : where *esse memorem* may be the Nominative Case to *oportet*. So when we say, *Vivitur*, *curritur*, *peccatur*, *vigilatur*, &c. we understand, *Vita*, *cursum*, *peccatum*, *nox* ; as, *Quo in genere multa peccantur*, Cic. *Noctes vigilantur amarae*, Ovid. And before Verbs of Exempt Action ; such as, *Tonat*, *pluit*, *fulgurat*, *lucescit*, &c. where *Deus*, *cælum*, *aër*, *nubes*, *lux*, or some such Nominative Case, must be understood. But Verbs of the *Infinitive* Mood, according to the *Latin* Structure, have always an Accusative Case before them express'd or understood ; but, according to the *Greeks*, often a Nominative.

(3) This Accusative Case is often understood. See *Chap. XLIX. (*)* Especially it is frequently understood before the Relative *Qui*, *quæ*, *quod* ; as, *Facilius reperias qui bene volent, quam qui bene faciunt* ; sub. *homines*.

(4) Sometimes the Verb *cæpit* is understood ; as, *Ego illud negare factum*, Ter. Sometimes, *solebas* ; as, *Galba multas similitudines afferre, multaque pro æquitate dicere*, Cic. Sometimes a Participle is understood ; as, *Divitiacus obsecrare cæpit, nequid gravius in fratrem statueret, scire se illa esse vera*, &c. sub. *dicens*, Cæf. Sometimes *equum est* ? *par est* ? *credibile est* ? are understood ; as, *Ah, rogitare ! Ah, that thou shouldst ask !* Ter.

(5) The Substantive to the Adjective is often understood. See the Doctrine concerning *Concord* : Especially to a Masculine Adjective, *homo* ; and to a Neuter Adjective, *negotium* ; for *negotium* is the same with *res* : and these Words, in good Authors, are us'd promiscuously ; as, *Ejus negotium sic velim suscipias, ut si esset res mea*, Cic. *Rerum autem omnium nec optius est quicquam ad opes tuendas*

tuendas quam diligere, nec alienius quam timere, Id. where *res* and *negotium* are confounded. *Aliena ne cures*, Ter. sub. *negotia*; which Horace expresses, *Aliena negotia curo*.

(6) Therefore there is an *Ellipsis*, when-ever the Substantive to the Relative is only express'd before it; as, *Vir sapiens qui pauca loquitur*, for *Qui vir*: or only after it; as, *Urbes quam statuo vestra esse*, for *Urbes quam urbem statuo*. And a double *Ellipsis*, when it is not express'd at all; as, *Sunt quos juvat*, for *Sunt homines quos homines juvat*.

(7) Therefore, when we meet with a Genitive Case construed with a Verb, or a Noun, or an Adverb, or a Preposition, there is either an *Hellenism*, (for the Greeks often govern their Genitive Case of a Preposition understood, after Adjectives or Verbs;) or an *Ellipsis*; of which see many Examples, Chap. LI. Fig. (5.)

(8) But the Verb is often understood; as, *En quatuor aras*, sub. *aspice*. *Me miserum*, sub. *sento*. *Dii meliora*, sub. *dent*. *Probat Deum atque hominum fidem!* sub. *imploro*. The Preposition is also often understood, of which the Accusative Case is govern'd; as, *Eo spectatum*. *Eo Romam*, sub. *ad*. *Pridie Calendas*, sub. *ante*. *Pedem ne discesseris*. *Saucius frontem*. *Cetera fulvus*. See Chap. LI. Fig. (5.)

(9) This Preposition is frequently understood, both after Verbs and Adjectives. See Chap. LI. Fig. (5.) Also Chap. XLIX. Fig. (10.) Also the Doctrine of the Prepositions.

(10) This Ablative is often understood, and sometimes hard to be found out. The Ablative Cases, *aquo*, *iusto*, or *solito*, are mostly understood. But all these Ablatives are govern'd of the Preposition *pro*, although, for the sake of Elegant Brevity, the *Latins* suppress it.

An APPENDIX:

CONTAINING

A Shorter and Easier Way of finding out the Gender of Nouns Substantives Common, by the Termination.

Nouns ending in a or e.

ALL Nouns ending in *a* or *e*, of the First Declension, are Feminines; (except *planeta* and *cometa*, Masculine, and *pascha* and *manna*, Neuter;) but all of the Third Declension, are Neuters. (1)

In i.

All Nouns ending in *i*, are Neuters, and undeclined. (2)

In o.

All Nouns that end in *o*, are Masculines; except *caro* and *grando*; and Words of more than two Syllables, ending in *do*, or in *go*, and making *dinis* and *ginis* in the Genitive Case: and Verbals ending in *io*, which are all Feminines; except *pugio*, Masculine. (3)

Q

In

In m, c, l, t.

All Nouns that end in *m, c, l, or t*, are Neuters; except *Sol*, which is Masculine; and *Sal*, which is both Masculine and Neuter. (4)

In n.

All Nouns that end in *n*, are Masculines; except *Icon* and *findon*, which are Feminines; and *gluten*, *ungen*, and *inguen*, and Nouns ending in *men*, which are Neuters. (5)

In ar and ur.

All Nouns ending in *ar* or *ur*, are Neuters; except *sarfar*, which is Masculine. (6)

In er.

All Nouns that end in *er*, are Masculines; except *luter*, a Feminine; *spinter*, *ver*, *cadaver*, *uber*, *iter*, and the Names of *Fruits* and *Plants*, which are Neuters. (7)

In or.

All Nouns that end in *or*, are Masculines; except *arbor*, which is Feminine; and *cor*, *aquor*, *marmor*, *ador*, which are Neuters. (8)

In as.

All Nouns that end in *as*, of the First Declension, are Masculines; but of the Third Declension, are Feminines; except *vas* *vasis*, which is of the Neuter; and those that make *antis* in the Genitive Case, are Masculines. (9)

In es.

All Nouns that end in *es*, are Feminines; except *dies*,

dies, which is Doubtful; *es*, which is Neuter : and *Cespes*, *fomes*, *gurgis*, *limes*, *palmes*, *paries*, *pes*, *paves*, *trames*, *termes*, *stipes*, and all Greek Nouns ending in *es* long, whether they be of the First or Third Declension in *Latin*, are Masculines. (10)

In Is.

All Nouns that end in *is*, are Feminines; except

Orbis & axis,
Callis, *caulis*, *foliis*, *collis*, *mensis*, & *ensis*,
Cassis, *fascis*, *torris*, *sensis*, *piscis*, & *unguis*,
Sic Fustis, *sanguis*, *pollis*, *vepris*, *cucumisque*;
Junge Lapis, *pulvis*; *sic vectis*, *postis*, *aqualis*;

and all Nouns ending in *nis*, which are Masculines; and *Finis*, *clunis*, *torquis*, *scrobis*, which are Doubtful. (11)

In os.

All Nouns ending in *os*, are Masculines; except *cos* and *dos*, which are Feminines; and *os* and *epos*, which are Neuters. (12)

In us of the Second and Fourth Declension.

All such Nouns ending in *us*, are Masculines; except some Greekish Nouns, and these Latin Nouns;

Porticus, *alvus*, *humus*, *colus*, & *domus*, *idus*, *acusque*,
Carbasus, & *tribus*, & *vannus*, *ficusque*, *manusque*,

which are Feminines; and *Grossus*, *specus*, *pennus*, *phaselus*, which are Doubtful; and *Virus*, *pelagus*, which are Neuters; and *vulgus*, which is both Masculine and Neuter. (13)

All that end in *us*, of the Third Declension, are Nouns; except *tellus*, and those that make the Genitive in *us*, *adis*, and *antis*, which are Feminines: and those that end in *pus*, and make *podis* in the Genitive, which are Masculines. (14)

In s impure.

Laus, *fraus*, and all Nouns ending in *s*, with a Consonant coming before *s*, are Feminines; except

Mons, & *sons*, *pons*, *dens*, *rudens*, *hydropsque*, *chalybsque*, which are Masculines; and *Stirps*, *scrobs*, *adepts*, which are Doubtful. (15)

In x.

All Nouns ending in *x*, are Feminines; except

——— *Fornix*, *spadix*, *grexque*, *calixque*,
Atque *Calyx*, *varix*, *xrpix*; ———

and all dissyllables in *ax* and *ex*, which are Masculines; except *Carex*, *fofnax*, *forfex*, which are Feminines: *Tradux* and *filex* are Doubtful; *Calx*, *cortex*, *pumex*, *imbrex*, *obex*, are rather Masculines; *Onyx* and *sandyx*, rather Feminines. (16)

Epicles usually follow the Gender of the Termination: but *Coccyx*, *Phœnix*, *nycticorax*, *bombyx*, *glis*, *gryps*, *turtur*, *vultur*, *orix*, *mus*, *lepus*, *vermis*, *mugil*, *merops*, *delpbis*, *nefrens*, and *salar*, are Masculines.

Halcyon, *halcx*, *lagopus*, *Aëdon*, are Feminines.

Limax and *Cenchris*, are Doubtful.

Grus, *perdix*, *serpens*, *lynx*, *talpa*, and *dama*, are more usually Feminines.

Anguis, and *palumbes*, more usually Masculines. (17)

Notes

Notes on the APPENDIX.

(1) *Scriba, affecla, rabula*, and the like, are Masculines by Signification; and so are such words as *Propheta, poeta, nauta*: For it is not necessary, that all Latin Nouns ending in *a*, should be Masculines, because they come from Greek Nouns in *es*, that are Masculines; witness, *Charta, margarita, metreta, cochlea*, Feminines. Perhaps *cometa* and *planeta* keep the Masculine Gender, with respect to the general Word *ἀστὴρ*: Yet *Tacitus* says, *Sidus cometes effulsit*. *Adria* for the *Sea*, is Masculine, with respect to the general Word *sinus*; for a *City*, Feminine, with respect to *urbis*. *Pascha paschatis*, of the Third Declension, is more usual. *Manna* of the Feminine Gender, signifies, *Mica thuris conchessu elisa*, *Plin.* *Dama*, and *Talpa* belong to the Rule about *Epicenes*.

(2) Vid. Chap. III. Fig. (8.)

(3) Not only those that end in *io*, and are deriv'd of Verbs, but of Nouns also, are Feminines; such as, *Portio* of *pars*, *talio* of *talis*, *ditio* of *dis*. *Unio, duernio, ternio, quaternio*, are indeed Masculines; but it is with respect to the general Word *numerus*. *Arbale* is found Feminine in *Varro*; and so is *margo* in *Juvenal*: In others, always Masculine. *Cupido* is found Masculine in *Horace*, and *talio* in *Tertullian*; but more usually Feminine. *Perduellio* signifying a *Traytor*, is Masculine; but signifying *Treason*, is Feminine. See Chap. V. Fig. (3.)

(4) To those that end in *um*, belong Greek Nouns in *ον*, which are made by *um* in *Latin*; as, *Ilion, gymnastion*. Of *Sal*, see Chap. V. Fig. (1.) *Mugil*, a Contraction of *mugilis*, is Masculine; but belongs to the *Epicenes*. *Strigil* is Neuter, and a Contraction of *strigilis*, which is Feminine: So the Antients terminated many words, which we now terminate in *is* or *us*; as, *Debil, famul, &c.*

(5) *Pythou* for a *Serpent*, is Masculine; for a *City*, is Feminine. Of *Alcyon* and *Aedon*, see Chap. VII. Fig. (1.)

(6) We read, *Albus jubar* (for *luna*) in *Enn.* *gutturum* in *Plaut.* *verus murmur* in *Varro*: But later Writers use them all in the Neuter. *Bacchar* also is Neuter; but *Baccharis* is Feminine.

(7) *Linter* is once us'd by *Tibullus* in the Masculine Gender; *Exiguus pulla per vada linter aqua*. Of *tuber*, see Chap. VI. Fig. (3.) *Verna tuberes*, in *Martial*, is the same with *vernaculi*. We read, *Laver cocta*, and *Tres fiseses*, *Plin.*

(8) See Chap. V. Fig. (4.) *Plautus* uses *calor*; and *Ausonius* uses *decor* in the Neuter Gender.

(9) As, *Hic tiaras*: But if it change its Termination, it changes its Gender, *Hec tiara*. Vid. *supr. Fig. (1.) Artocreas, Erysipelas*, and the Herb *Buceras*, continue Neuters in *Latin*, as they are in *Greek*.

(10) *Aromatites*, and some other Names of Precious Stones, of the First Declension, are sometimes us'd in the Feminine Gender, with respect to the general Word, *Gemma*. *Greek* Nouns that end in *es* by *Epsilon*, of the Third Declension, are all Neuters; such as, *Nepenthes, Hippomanes, Cacoetibes*. Some will have *merges, ames, rudes*, and *trudes*, to be sometimes us'd in the Masculine Gender; but Authorities are rare, if any. *Dies* for *Time*, is Feminine; (hence *diecula*, for a *short Time*;) but us'd precisely for a *Day*, is Masculine: hence *hodie*, q. d. *hoc die*. But this Difference is not always observ'd. *Sanguis dies infanda aderat*, *Virg.*

(11) The old Word *Retus* is found of the Masculine Gender. *Natalis* is only us'd in the Masculine, though *dies* be Doubtful. It must be confess'd, that *Callis, lapis, pollis, pulvis*, and also, *Amnis, civis, funis, crinis*, are found in the Feminine Gender; but it is only in old Authors, and that rarely. Also, *corbis* is found in the Masculine, saith *Priscian*. *Semis* is found us'd as an undeclin'd Word; and also, as making the Genitive *semissis*, (and then it is Masculine) *Vet. Vers. Bibl. Ex. 20. 10. Longitudo habeat duos & semis cubitos, altitudo cubitum similiter & semissem*.

(12) *Greek* Nouns in *os*, of their Third Declension, when they are us'd in *Latin*, are generally Feminines; as, *Arctos, Eos, diame-tros*, (subaud. *γραμμά* *linea*;) Some few are Masculines; as, *E-podos*.

(13) *Greekish* Nouns in *us*, that end in *os*, of the Third Declension in *Greek*, keep the same Gender that they are of in the *Greek*: And so some of them are Masculines, and some Feminines; and some both. See Chap. IV. Fig. (6.) Concerning *fecus*, see Chap. IV. Fig. (5.) Concerning *acus*, see Chap. VII. Fig. (2.) Concerning *specus* and *penus*, see Chap. XIX. Fig. (7.) When these are of the Third Declension, they are Neuters, and belong to the next Rule. *Sexus* (apparently *secus*) is found Neuter in *Plautus*; *Virile sexus* *iniquam ullum habuit*. Of old they said, *Sexus* and *sexu*, as *gelus* and *gelu*, *cornus* and *cornu*, *Martin*.

(14) The Compounds of *πῆρ ποδός*, are Masculines; as, *Tripus, polypus, apus, chytropus*, — *podis*. But *lagopus* is Feminine, with respect to the general word *avis* or *berba*.

(15) Those

(15) Those that end in *s* impure, seem to be made out of old Nominative Cases in *es* or *is*; as, *Plebs*, *adeps*, *fors*, *mens*, *lens*, *ars*, of *Plebes*, *adipes*, *fortis*, *mentis*, *lentis*, *artis*: as, *Nescit plebes jejuna timere*, Luc. *Bidens* for a Fork, or a Pigg, is Masculine, with respect to *ligo* or *verris*; for a Sheep it is Feminine, with respect to *ovis*. Of *Seps*, *stirps*, *stips*, see Chap. VII. Fig. (2.) *Rudens* is Feminine in *Plautus*; perhaps with respect to *funis*, which was also antiently Feminine.

(16) Of *Atriplex*, *angx*, *sardonyx*, and *sandyx*, see Chap. VI. Fig. (5.) (6.) Of *calx*, see Chap. V. Fig. (8.). *Lux* is us'd Masculine by *Plautus*, and *crux* by *Ennius*: but now they are obsolete in that Gender.

(17) *Bubo* is found Feminine in *Virgil*, perhaps with respect to the general word *avis*. Of *Bombyx* and *Gonchrys*, see Chap. VII. Fig. (2.) *Virgil* only uses *talpa* and *dama*, with Masculine Adjectives; which is only to avoid an Inconvenience in his Verse call'd *ὁμοτέλευτος*, Serv. *Culex* is Doubtful.

FINIS.

Books

Books Printed for, and Sold by
Richard Wilde, next Door to
the Star in the Old-Bayley.

Plutarch's *Morals*, Vol. III. Translated
from the *Greek* by several Hands.

————— Vol. IV. (which will
Compleat the Whole) will be Published
next *Hilary-Term*.

A Remedy for the Itch of Scribling, a-
gainst the Errors of *John Brown*, Chi-
rurgeon; with a Refutation of divers Vul-
gar Errors in Chirurgery and Anatomy:
By *James Young*, Chirurgeon. In 12°.

Owen's Epigrams.

~~Wilde's Epigrams, &c.~~
~~Wilde's Epigrams, &c.~~
~~Wilde's Epigrams, &c.~~

Commenii Vestibulum. In 8°.

*Bathomley's Epitome of the Book of
Martyrs.* In 8°.

Gentlewoman's Companion: By *Han-
nah Woolly*. In 12°.

Dyer's Character of Blood. In 8°.

Kitchen of Courts: With Additions, by
Antrobus of Gray's-Inn.

